

ترجمه کتاب:



4000

Essential

English

Words

با پاسخ تمرینات

منبعی عالی

برای واژگان

جلد دوم

2

Paul Nation

BeFluent.ir



4000 Essential English Words 2

۴۰۰۰ کلمه ضروری
ترجمه جلد دوم

تعداد صفحات: 350

بهترین منابع آموزشی زبان انگلیسی در وبسایت ما:

www.befluent.ir

فایل‌های صوتی تلفظ کامل کتاب را از وبسایت دانلود کنید.

این کتاب توسط گروه befluent.ir ترجمه شده است و هر گونه کپی و انتشار آن در اینترنت مجاز نبوده و پیگرد قانونی خواهد داشت.



 **BeFluent.ir**

معرفی کتاب:

تحقیقات نشان می‌دهد که در بیشتر مکالمات روزمره تنها از درصد کمی از کلمات هر زبان به صورت مکرر استفاده می‌شود. این واقعیت بیان‌گر این است که زبان‌آموزان با یادگیری این کلمات پرتکرار قادر خواهند بود که اکثر مکالمات را متوجه شده و در گام بعدی با تکرار و تسلط در استفاده از این کلمات، مهارت مکالمه خود را به صورت چشمگیری بهبود ببخشند.

سری کتاب‌های 4000 کلمه ضروری شامل 6 جلد است که در هر جلد بیشتر از 600 کلمه پرتکرار در مکالمه گنجانده شده است. در این مجموعه کلمات با توجه به میزان کاربردی بودن و تکرار آن‌ها در مکالمات و متون انتخاب شده‌اند. بنابراین با خواندن و یادگیری این کلمات مطمئن خواهید بود کلماتی که بیش از 90 درصد مکالمات انگلیسی را پوشش می‌دهند، را فرا گرفته‌اید. و از یادگیری کلماتی که ممکن است هیچوقت مورد استفاده شما قرار نگیرند، اجتناب می‌کنید. بنابراین این کلمات دارای مشخصه‌های زیر هستند:

- (1) هم در مکالمات و هم در نوشتاری بسیار کاربردی هستند.
- (2) پرتکرارترین کلمات هم در مکالمه و هم در نوشتاری هستند.
- (3) این مجموعه تقریباً 90 درصد کلمات استفاده شده در مکالمات انگلیسی، 80 درصد کلمات متون آکادمیک و 90 درصد کلمات داستان‌ها را شامل می‌شود.

نحوه آموزش کلمات:

جلد دوم شامل 30 درس و هر درس شامل 20 کلمه می‌باشد. تمامی کلمات، تعاریف، مثال‌ها و داستان‌ها دارای تلفظ با لهجه آمریکایی می‌باشند.

ابتدا خود کلمه و معنی فارسی آن آمده است. سپس تعریف کلمه به انگلیسی و بعد از آن یک مثال برای آن کلمه به همراه ترجمه فارسی قرار داده شده است. در انتهای هر درس یک داستان که در بر دارنده تمام کلمات آن درس است به همراه ترجمه قرار دارد. با خواندن این داستان هم معنی کلمات آن درس برای شما مرور خواهد شد و هم با نحوه استفاده و کاربرد آن کلمات در موقعیت‌های واقعی آشنا خواهید شد. همینطور هر درس شامل تمرین‌هایی برای یادگیری بهتر کلمات است. پاسخ این تمرین‌ها در انتهای کتاب آورده شده است.

برای هر کلمه یک عکس اختصاص داده شده است. این عکس‌ها مرتبط با مثال آن کلمه هستند. با دیدن این عکس‌ها شما در ذهن خود یک موقعیت مربوط به آن مثال را تصور خواهید کرد که در به خاطر سپردن آن کلمه تاثیر فوق‌العاده‌ای خواهد داشت.

همینطور حالت هر کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...) مشخص شده است. دقت کنید که ممکن است یک کلمه حالت‌های دیگری نیز داشته باشد، شما سعی کنید تمرکز خود را روی حالتی از کلمه قرار دهید که مد نظر کتاب است.

توضیح اجزای آموزشی هر کلمه:



- 6** **8** **adj.** **1** **anxious** **7** **['æŋkʃəs]**
- 2** نگران، مضطرب
- 3** When a person is anxious, they worry that something bad will happen.
- 4** She was anxious about not making her appointment on time.
- 5** او بابت اینکه نوبت را سر وقت نگرفته نگران بود.

- (1) کلمه
- (2) معنی فارسی کلمه
- (3) تعریف انگلیسی کلمه
- (4) مثال برای آن کلمه
- (5) ترجمه مثال
- (6) عکسی مرتبط با کلمه و مثال
- (7) فونتیک (IPA) با لهجه آمریکایی برای کلمه
- (8) حالت کلمه (فعل، صفت، اسم و ...)

توضیح حالت‌های مختلف یک کلمه

- v.** = verb فعل
- n.** = noun اسم
- adj.** = adjective صفت
- prep.** = preposition حرف اضافه
- pron.** = pronoun ضمیر
- conj.** = conjunction حرف ربط

لیست دروس و کلمات (جلد دوم)

Unit	Target Words	Page
1	anxious, awful, consist, desire, eager, household, intent, landscape, lift, load, lung, motion, pace, polite, possess, rapidly, remark, seek, shine, spill	8
2	bring, castle, command, counsel, ensure, explosion, jewelry, land, meteor, monster, northern, remote, southern, statue, steam, submit, temple, upper, weed, wing	14
3	arrow, battle, bow, brave, chief, disadvantage, enemy, entrance, hardly, intend, laughter, log, military, obey, secure, steady, trust, twist, unless, weapon	20
4	chest, confidence, consequence, disaster, disturb, estimate, honor, impress, marathon, narrow, pale, rough, satisfy, scream, sensitive, shade, supplement, terror, threat, victim	26
5	ancestor, angle, boot, border, congratulate, frame, heaven, incredible, legend, praise, proceed, pure, relative, senior, silent, sink, superior, surround, thick, wrap	32
6	abroad, anger, bride, brief, chase, disappoint, dive, exchange, favor, fee, forever, guy, lovely, mood, palace, permit, protest, sculpture, tribe, youth	38
7	basis, biology, cage, colleague, colony, debate, depart, depress, factual, fascinate, mission, nevertheless, occupation, overseas, persuade, route, ruins, scholar, significant, volcano	44
8	broad, bush, capable, cheat, concentrate, conclude, confident, considerable, convey, definite, delight, destination, dictate, edge, path, resort, shadow, succeed, suspect, valley	50
9	admire, aid, attempt, authority, capital, cooperate, defend, destruction, disorder, division, enable, frustrate, govern, plenty, relieve, reputation, royal, slave, struggle, stupid	56
10	citizen, council, declare, enormous, extraordinary, fog, funeral, giant, impression, income, mad, ought, resist, reveal, rid, sword, tale, trap, trial, violent	62
11	admission, astronomy, blame, chemistry, despite, dinosaur, exhibit, fame, forecast, genius, gentle, geography, interfere, lightly, principal, row, shelf, spite, super, wet	68
12	abuse, afford, bake, bean, candle, convert, debt, decrease, fault, fund, generous, ingredient, insist, mess, metal, monitor, oppose, passive, quantity, sue	74
13	anxiety, army, billion, carve, consult, emergency, fortune, guarantee, hike, initial, intense, lend, peak, potential, pride, proof, quit, spin, tiny, tutor	80
14	apparent, blind, calculate, chat, commit, compose, dormitory, exhaust, greenhouse, ignore, obvious, physics, portion, remind, secretary, severe, talent, thesis, uniform, vision	86
15	absorb, boss, committee, contract, crew, devote, dig, dine, donate, double, elevate, flavor, foundation, generation, handle, layer, mud, smooth, soil, unique	92

Unit	Target Words	Page
16	chamber, deny, document, emphasize, fever, flu, freeze, gesture, interrupt, last, likeness, moreover, perspective, rational, recover, rely, shock, shy, stare, thus	98
17	aim, attach, bet, carriage, classic, commute, confirm, criticize, differ, expense, formal, height, invent, junior, labor, mechanic, prime, shift, signal, sincere	104
18	ability, agriculture, cartoon, ceiling, convince, curious, delay, diary, element, faith, grain, greet, investigate, joy, label, monk, odd, pause, priest, profession	110
19	adopt, beg, beyond, costume, exclaim, extend, fool, forbid, illustrate, indeed, interpret, kindly, motive, nest, origin, reception, reject, silence, stream, tone	116
20	accomplish, approve, approximate, barrier, detect, duty, elementary, failure, gradual, immigrant, insert, instant, poverty, pretend, rank, recognition, refrigerate, rent, retire, statistic	122
21	astronaut, awake, courage, float, grant, gravity, jewel, miner, mineral, participate, permission, pour, presence, raw, satellite, scale, skip, stretch, telescope, underground	128
22	alarm, apart, arrest, award, breed, bucket, contest, convict, garage, journalist, pup, qualify, repair, resume, rob, slip, somewhat, stable, tissue, yard	134
23	alike, annoy, architecture, artificial, chain, distinct, distinguish, dust, excitement, heal, inherit, manner, mount, roof, shortage, solid, stock, substance, tomb, wound	140
24	bath, bend, chew, disabled, fantastic, fiction, flag, inspect, journal, liquid, marvel, nutrient, overcome, recall, regret, soul, sufficient, surgery, tough, tube	146
25	admit, bin, bowl, cabin, cash, criminal, dozen, elder, facial, fence, inspire, mere, neat, occasion, penalty, rude, settle, vehicle, wallet, yell	152
26	accuse, adjust, amuse, coral, cotton, crash, deck, engage, firm, fuel, grand, hurricane, loss, plain, reef, shut, strict, surf, task, zone	158
27	apology, bold, capture, cardinal, duke, expose, guilty, hire, innocent, jail, minister, ordinary, permanent, preserve, pronounce, resemble, symptom, tobacco, twin, witch	164
28	accompany, bare, branch, breath, bridge, cast, dare, electronic, inn, net, philosophy, pot, seed, sharp, sort, subtract, tight, virtual, weigh, whisper	170
29	abstract, annual, clay, cloth, curtain, deserve, feather, fertile, flood, furniture, grave, ideal, intelligence, nowadays, obtain, religious, romantic, shell, shore, wheel	176
30	appeal, assume, borrow, client, downtown, dull, embarrass, fare, former, formula, found, invest, loan, practical, quarter, salary, scholarship, temporary, treasure, urge	182

Introduction

About the Vocabulary

The 600 words in each book of this series along with the additional target words presented in the appendices included in the first three books of the series are the most useful words in English. They were found by analysis of a collection of English course books from various levels in the primary, secondary and tertiary school systems. The words included in this series were chosen because they occurred many times in different levels of these materials. Because of the way that they were chosen, these words have the following characteristics:

- 1 They are useful in both spoken and written English. No matter what English course you are studying, the words in these books will be of value to you.
- 2 Each word in these books is a high-frequency word. This means that the effort in learning the words is well repaid by the number of times learners have a chance to encounter or use them.
- 3 These books as a whole cover a large proportion of the words in any spoken or written text. They cover at least 80% of the words in newspapers and academic texts, and at least 90% of the words in novels. They also cover at least 90% of the words in conversation.

About the Books

The activities in these books are specially designed to make use of important learning conditions. Firstly, the words are introduced using sentence definitions and an example sentence. The activities that follow in the units encourage learners to recall the meanings and forms of the words. Some activities also make the learners think about the meaning of the words in the context of a sentence—a sentence different from the sentences that occurred in the introduction of the words. Moreover, each unit ends with a story containing the target words. While reading the story, the learners have to recall the meanings of the words and suit them to the context of the story. Such activities help learners develop a better understanding of a common meaning for a given word which fits the different uses.

Illustrations for each target word are provided to help learners visualize the word as it is being used in the example sentence. These word/image associations aim to help students grasp the meaning of the word as well as recall the word later.

It should be noted that words have more than one grammatical category. However, this series focuses on the word's most common form. This is mentioned to remind learners that just because a word is labeled and utilized as a noun in this series does not mean that it can never be used in another form such as an adjective. This series has simply focused on the word in the form that it is most likely to be expressed.

Supporting Learning with Outside Activities

A well-balanced language course provides four major opportunities for learning: learning through input, learning through output, deliberate learning, and fluency development. The highly structured activities in these books support all four types of learning opportunities. In addition, learning can further be supported through the following activities:

- 1 Have students create vocabulary cards with one word from the unit on one side of the card and the translation of the word in the student's first language on the other side. Students should use the cards for study in free moments during the day. Over several weeks, students will find that quick repeated studying for brief periods of time is more effective than studying for hours at one sitting.
- 2 Assign graded readers at students' appropriate levels. Reading such books provides both enjoyment as well as meaning-focused input which will help the words stick in students' memory.
- 3 Practice reading fluency to promote faster recall of word meaning for both sight recognition and usage. Compass Publishing's *Reading for Speed and Fluency* is a good resource for reading fluency material.
- 4 Include listening, speaking, and writing activities in classes. Reinforcement of the high-frequency vocabulary presented in this series is important across all the four language skills.

Author Paul Nation

Paul Nation is professor of Applied Linguistics in the School of Linguistics and Applied Language Studies at Victoria University of Wellington, New Zealand. He has taught in Indonesia, Thailand, the United States, Finland, and Japan. His specialist interests are language teaching methodology and vocabulary learning.





لیست کلمات درس 1

- anxious (adj.)
- awful (adj.)
- consist (v.)
- desire (v.)
- eager (adj.)
- household (n.)
- intent (n.)
- landscape (n.)
- lift (v.)
- load (v.)
- lung (n.)
- motion (n.)
- pace (n.)
- polite (adj.)
- possess (v.)
- rapidly (adv.)
- remark (v.)
- seek (v.)
- shine (v.)
- spill (v.)



adj.

anxious

['æŋkʃəs]

نگران، مضطرب

- ❖ When a person is anxious, they worry that something bad will happen.
- She was anxious about not making her appointment on time.
- او بابت اینکه نوبت را سر وقت نگرفته نگران بود.



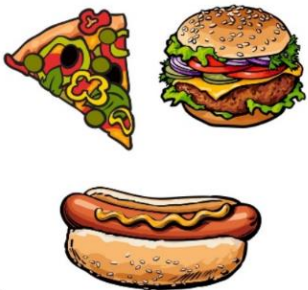
adj.

awful

['ɔ:fl]

بسیار بد ، افتضاح

- ❖ When something is awful, it is very bad.
- Her performance last night was awful.
- شب گذشته ، اجرایش افتضاح بود.



v.

consist

[kən'sɪst]

شامل چیزی بودن، مرکب بودن از، عبارت بودن از

- ❖ To consist of is to be made of parts or things.
- Today's choices for lunch consisted of pizza, hamburgers, and hot dogs.
- انتخاب‌های ناهار امروز شامل پیتزا ، همبرگر و هات داگ بود.

v.

desire

[di'zaiəɪə]

آرزو کردن، خواستن

- ❖ To desire is to want something.
- My sister desires a big house and lots of money.



➤ خواهرم خانه‌ای بزرگ و پول زیادی را آرزو می‌کند.



adj.

eager

['i:ɡər]

مشتاق، راغب

- ❖ When a person is eager about something, they are excited about it.
- The man was eager to talk about the good news.

➤ آن مرد مشتاق بود درباره خبر خوب صحبت کند.



n.

household

['haʊshəʊld]

اهل خانه، خانواده

- ❖ A household is all the people who live in one house.
- Our household is made up of my father, my mother and me.

➤ خانواده ما از پدرم، مادرم و من تشکیل شده است.



n.

intent

[in'tent]

قصد، نیت، تصمیم

- ❖ An intent is a plan to do something.
- Her intent is to visit Italy next summer.

➤ تصمیم او این است که در تابستان آینده از ایتالیا دیدن کند.



n.

landscape

['lændskeɪp]

چشم انداز، منظره

- ❖ A landscape is how an area of land looks.
- The landscape of the country is very green.

➤ منظره‌ی حومه‌ی شهر بسیار سرسبز است.

v.

lift

[lɪft]

بلند کردن، برداشتن

- ❖ To lift something is to move it higher.
- The man tried to lift the box.

➤ مرد سعی کرد جعبه را بلند کند.

v.

load

[ləʊd]

بار کردن، بار زدن

- ❖ To load is to put objects into something.
- The man loaded the boxes into a truck.

➤ مرد جعبه‌ها را در داخل یک کامیون بار زد.

n.

lung

[lʌŋ]

ریه، شش

- ❖ A lung is the organ in the body that fills with air when breathing.
- Having strong lungs is necessary for a healthy life.

➤ داشتن ریه‌های قوی برای یک زندگی سالم ضروری است.

n.

motion

['mɒʃn]

حرکت

- ❖ A motion is a movement that someone makes.
- The police officer made a motion with his hand.

➤ افسر پلیس با دستش حرکتی انجام داد.

n.

pace

[peɪs]

سرعت، گام



❖ The pace of something is the speed at which it happens.

➤ I ran the race at a slower pace than my friend.

➤ من مسابقه را با سرعت آهسته‌تری نسبت به دوستم دویدم.

adj.

polite

[pə'laɪt]

مودب، با ادب



❖ When someone is polite, they are acting in a thoughtful way.

➤ The boy was very polite: he behaved very thoughtfully.

➤ آن پسر بسیار مودب بود، او بسیار متفکرانه رفتار کرد.

v.

possess

[pə'zes]

دارا بودن، داشتن



❖ To possess something is to have it or own it.

➤ My uncle possesses three sheep, a chicken, a cow and a dog.

➤ عموی من دارای سه گوسفند، یک مرغ، یک گاو و یک سگ است.

adv.

rapidly

['ræpɪdli]

با سرعت



❖ When something happens rapidly, it happens very fast.

➤ The train moved rapidly on the tracks.

➤ قطار با سرعت بر روی خط آهن حرکت کرد.

v.

remark

[ri'ma:rk]

اظهار کردن، گفتن



❖ To remark is to say something.

➤ The teacher remarked on how quickly the students were learning.

➤ معلم اظهار کرد که دانش آموزان با سرعت در حال یادگیری بودند.

v.

seek

[si:k]

جستجو کردن، خواستن



❖ To seek is to look for something.

➤ If I have a problem, I seek my sister's advice.

➤ اگر مشکلی داشته باشم، از خواهرم مشاوره می‌خواهم.

v.

shine

[ʃaɪn]

درخشیدن



❖ To shine is to make a bright light.

➤ The candles are shining the dark room.

➤ شمع ها اتاق تاریک را درخشان می‌کنند.

v.

spill

[spɪl]

ریختن



❖ To spill is to have something fall out of its container.

➤ I spilled the coffee on the table.

➤ من قهوه را روی میز ریختم.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a movement
a. pace b. intent c. lungs d. motion
- to look for
a. seek b. possess c. shine d. desire
- to pick up
a. eager b. lift c. remark d. spill
- very fast
a. landscape b. household c. rapidly d. awful
- feeling worried
a. consisting of b. load c. polite d. anxious

Part B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- possess
a. to look for b. to own
c. to pick up d. to put in
- desire
a. to want b. to make up of
c. to have d. to say
- intent
a. an area of land b. an organ
c. a plan d. a feeling
- shine
a. to learn b. to make light
c. to have something fall out d. to move fast
- polite
a. thoughtful b. worried
c. fast d. excited

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. It is hard to **seek** for things when it is sunny.
___ b. A **landscape** may have snow during the winter.
2. ___ a. Most children are **eager** to get gifts.
___ b. Good friends are **awful** to have around.
3. ___ a. The **lungs** help move blood through the body.
___ b. People may feel **anxious** when they give a speech.
4. ___ a. It isn't **polite** to take things without asking first.
___ b. You should help **spill** the dishes after dinner.
5. ___ a. If you work at a fast **pace**, things will get done quickly.
___ b. It is important to **lift** your notes before a test.
6. ___ a. People are **eager** to leave when they don't want to go anywhere.
___ b. You should get help when **lifting** heavy boxes.
7. ___ a. Some people live in the **landscape** while others live in the city.
___ b. Everyone has **awful** days where nothing goes right.
8. ___ a. It is good to **seek** advice when you have a problem.
___ b. Students feel **anxious** when they get good grades.
9. ___ a. When you breathe, air goes into your **lungs**.
___ b. Some students **pace** to school every day.
10. ___ a. **Polite** people do not say "please" or "thank you."
___ b. When you **spill** something, you should clean it up right away.

The Twelve Months

An awful woman lived with her daughter and stepdaughter in her household. She possessed feelings of hate for her stepdaughter, Anna. Anna worked while her stepsister did nothing. On a cold January night, Anna's stepmother remarked, "Your stepsister desires flowers. Go and find some."

Anna wasn't anxious to walk through the chilled landscape. The cold air made her lungs burn. She walked at a slow pace because of the snow. Soon she saw a group of people. It consisted of twelve men. Anna told them about the flowers.

One of the man said they were the twelve months and that they would help Anna. January walked to her and made a motion with his hand. The days of the month passed rapidly until it was February's turn. February also made the month speed up. Then March made the sun shine and flowers grew in the field.

Anna loaded her basket with so many flowers that she could hardly lift it. Then she gave a quick but polite "thank you" to the twelve men and returned home. She was very eager to show her stepmother all the flowers. Back at the house, she spilled the flowers onto the table. Then she told her stepmother about the twelve men. Anna's stepmother and stepsister went to seek the twelve months. Their intent was to ask for gifts. They looked and looked. They became very lost and never found their way home. Anna lived happily by herself.



دوازده ماه

یک زن بسیار بد با دختر و دختر خوانده‌اش در خانواده خود زندگی می‌کرد. او نسبت به آن، دختر خوانده‌اش احساس تنفر داشت. آن کار می‌کرد در حالی که ناخواهری او هیچ کاری انجام نمی‌داد. در یک شب سرد ماه ژانویه، نامادری آن اظهار داشت: "خواهر خوانده‌ات گل می‌خواهد. برو و چندتا پیدا کن."

آنها برای عبور از منظره‌ی یخ زده نگران نبود. هوای سرد ریه‌های او را می‌سوزاند. بخاطر برف با سرعت کم قدم می‌زد. طولی نکشید او گروهی از افراد را دید. آن گروه شامل دوازده مرد بود. آنها در مورد گل‌ها به آنها گفت.

یکی از مردها گفت که آنها دوازده ماه سال هستند و به آنها کمک خواهند کرد. ژانویه به سمت او قدم برداشت و با دست خود حرکتی انجام داد. روزهای ماه با سرعت گذشتند تا نوبت به فوریه رسید. فوریه همچنین ماه را سرعت بخشید. سپس ماه مارس باعث درخشش خورشید شد و گل‌ها در دشت رشد کردند.

آنها سبد خود را با گل‌های بسیار زیادی پر کرد که به سختی می‌توانست آن را بلند کند. سپس او یک "متشکر" سریع اما مودبانه به دوازده مرد گفت و به خانه بازگشت. او بسیار مشتاق بود که همه‌ی گل‌ها را به نامادری خود نشان دهد. به خانه برگشت، او گل‌ها را روی میز ریخت. سپس او در مورد دوازده مرد به نامادری خود گفت. نامادری و خواهر خوانده‌ی آنها به جستجوی دوازده ماه رفتند. قصد آنها درخواست هدایا بود. آنها گشتند و گشتند. آنها بدجور گم شدند و هرگز راه خانه‌ی خود را پیدا نکردند. آنها به تنهایی خوشحال و خرم زندگی کرد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the story about?
 - a. Why a year consists of twelve months
 - b. How a girl made the sun shine in winter
 - c. Why moving at a slow pace is good
 - d. How the months helped a polite girl

2. Why did Anna need to seek flowers?
 - a. Her stepmother remarked that she liked them.
 - b. Her awful stepsister desired them for her birthday.
 - c. She spilled the ones she already possessed.
 - d. She was eager to please her stepmother.

3. In paragraph 4 we can infer that _____.
 - a. the months rapidly helped Anna load her basket
 - b. Anna asked the months to live in her household
 - c. Anna's awful stepmother and stepsister never found the months
 - d. Anna got lost going across the dark landscape on her way home

4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the cold air hurt Anna's lungs
 - b. Anna's stepmother lifted the basket
 - c. January made a motion to speed up time
 - d. Anna wasn't anxious to go out in the cold, dark night

5. What was Anna's stepmother's and stepsister's intent when they left?



لیست کلمات درس 2

- bring (v.)
- castle (n.)
- command (v.)
- counsel (v.)
- ensure (v.)
- explosion (n.)
- jewelry (n.)
- land (v.)
- meteor (n.)
- monster (n.)
- northern (adj.)
- remote (adj.)
- southern (adj.)
- statue (n.)
- steam (n.)
- submit (v.)
- temple (n.)
- upper (adj.)
- weed (n.)
- wing (n.)

v.

bring

[brɪŋ]

آوردن



- ❖ To bring means to take someone or something to a person or place.
- Oscar will bring in all the boxes.

➤ اسکار همه‌ی جعبه‌ها را داخل خواهد آورد.

n.

castle

['kæsl]

قلعه



- ❖ A castle is a building with strong walls where royalty usually lives.
- The castle was built many years ago.

➤ این قلعه سال‌ها پیش ساخته شد.

v.

command

[kə'mænd]

دستور دادن



- ❖ To command someone is to tell them to do something.
- The general commanded his army to attack.

➤ ژنرال به ارتش خود دستور داد حمله کنند.

v.

counsel

['kaʊnsəl]

مشاوره دادن



- ❖ To counsel someone is to listen and give advice about a problem.
- The teacher counseled the girl about her troubles.

➤ معلم به آن دختر درمورد مشکلاتش مشاوره داد.

v.

ensure

[ɪn'ʃʊr]

تضمین کردن، اطمینان دادن

- ❖ To ensure is to make certain that something happens.
- Eating good food ensures that we stay healthy.

➤ خوردن غذای خوب تضمین می‌کند که سالم بمانیم.

n.

explosion

[ɪk'splɒʒn]

انفجار

- ❖ An explosion is a violent burst, usually with a loud sound.
- A nuclear explosion can cause great damage.

➤ انفجار هسته‌ای می‌تواند باعث خسارت زیادی شود.

n.

jewelry

['dʒu:əlri]

جواهرات

- ❖ jewelry is something that people wear like earrings or necklaces.
- The woman looked beautiful with her nice dress and jewelry.

➤ آن زن با لباس جذاب و جواهراتش، زیبا بنظر می‌رسید.

v.

land

[lænd]

فرود آمدن

- ❖ To land means to come to the ground usually from a ship or aircraft.
- The parachutist landed safely on the ground.

➤ چترباز به سلامت بر زمین فرود آمد.

n.

meteor

['mi:tɪər]

شهاب سنگ



❖ A meteor is a rock from outer space that falls to Earth.

➤ We saw a meteor in the sky last night.

➤ ما دیشب در آسمان یک شهاب سنگ دیدیم.

n.

monster

['mɑ:nstər]

هیولا



❖ A monster is any imaginary frightening creature that looks strange.

➤ The monster scared everyone in the village.

➤ هیولا همه را در روستا ترساند.

adj.

northern

['nɔ:rðərn]

شمالی



❖ If something is northern, it is in the direction of north.

➤ It is much colder in northern countries than it is here.

➤ کشورهای شمالی نسبت به اینجا بسیار سردتر هستند.

adj.

remote

[ri'məʊt]

دوردست، دورافتاده



❖ If something is remote, it is very far away and difficult to get to.

➤ It took many days to get to the remote island.

➤ روزهای زیادی طول کشید تا به جزیره دورافتاده رسیدیم.

adj.

southern

['sʌðərn]

جنوبی

- ❖ If something is southern, it is in the direction of south.
- Taegu is located in the southern part of the Korean peninsula.
- شهر تیاگو در بخش جنوبی شبه جزیره کره قرار گرفته است.



n.

statue

['stætʃu:]

مجسمه

- ❖ A statue is an image of a person or animal made of stone or metal.
- I saw a beautiful statue of a lion today.
- امروز یک مجسمه زیبا از یک شیر را دیدم.



n.

steam

[sti:m]

بخار

- ❖ steam is water that has become hot and has turned into a misty gas.
- We could see the steam rise from the boiling water.
- ما می‌توانستیم بخار برخواسته از آب جوش را ببینیم.



v.

submit

[səb'mit]

تسلیم شدن، تمکین کردن

- ❖ To submit to someone is to agree to do what they tell you to do.
- She submitted to her mother's wishes and did her homework.
- او تسلیم خواسته‌های مادرش شد و تکالیفش را انجام داد.



n.

temple

['templ]

معبد

- ❖ A temple is a building that is used for religious purposes.
- The people visited the temple to pray.

➤ مردم از معبدی برای پرستش دیدن کردند.



adj.

upper

['ʌpər]

بالایی

- ❖ upper means higher in position or place.
- A home's attic is at the upper part of the structure.

➤ اتاق زیر شیروانی در بخش بالایی ساختمان قرار دارد.



n.

weed

[wi:d]

علف هرز

- ❖ A weed is a plant, especially one that is not useful or wanted.
- The yard of the house was full of ugly weeds.

➤ حیاط خانه پر از علف‌های هرز زشت بود.



n.

wing

[wɪŋ]

بال

- ❖ A wing is the part of an animal that lets it fly.
- The bird used its wings to fly across the water.

➤ آن پرنده از بال‌هایش برای پرواز از این سو به آن سوی آب استفاده کرد.



Exercise 1

Circle two words that are related in each group.

- a. counsel b. explosion c. meteor d. bring
- a. northern b. remote c. meteor d. southern
- a. land b. steam c. castle d. temple
- a. northern b. wing c. upper d. meteor
- a. statue b. command c. weed d. submit

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- The bird hurt its body part that helps it fly.
wi _____
- There are many stone images in the museum.
sta _____
- The fire made the water turn into hot misty air.
st _____
- The teacher told me to listen to and follow his rules.
s _____ to
- Go to the higher part of the building and clean the windows.
u _____

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. Many **castles** are built with thick stone walls.
___ b. When you **command** somebody, you work for them.
2. ___ a. All children **bring** live animals to the zoo.
___ b. Some women wear **jewelry** on their ears and hands.
3. ___ a. You put on **jewelry** when you take a bath.
___ b. When I **counsel** you, I am trying to help you.
4. ___ a. It takes a long time to get to **remote** places.
___ b. **Weeds** make a house more beautiful.
5. ___ a. Good parents **ensure** that their children are safe.
___ b. The people were happy when the **monster** was elected president.
6. ___ a. The **explosion** made everyone sleepy.
___ b. I forgot to **bring** my camera when I went on vacation.
7. ___ a. If I **command** you to work, then I want you to work.
___ b. You can easily **ensure** that it rains.
8. ___ a. The scary **monster** caused much damage to the village.
___ b. Students visit **remote** places after school every day.
9. ___ a. Many people have a **castle** inside their house.
___ b. If you don't keep your yard clean, **weeds** will grow.
10. ___ a. Students must **counsel** their teachers.
___ b. The **explosion** in the sky was caused by the fireworks.

The Dragon

An evil dragon lived in a **castle** in the **remote southern** mountains.

One day the **monster landed** in a town. The dragon **commanded** the people, "Give me food now, or I will eat you!" The dragon lifted its **wings** so that its lungs could be completely filled with hot **steam**, and breathed it upon the people. A man turned into a stone **statue!**

The people **submitted** and brought food. The dragon ate all of it and left.

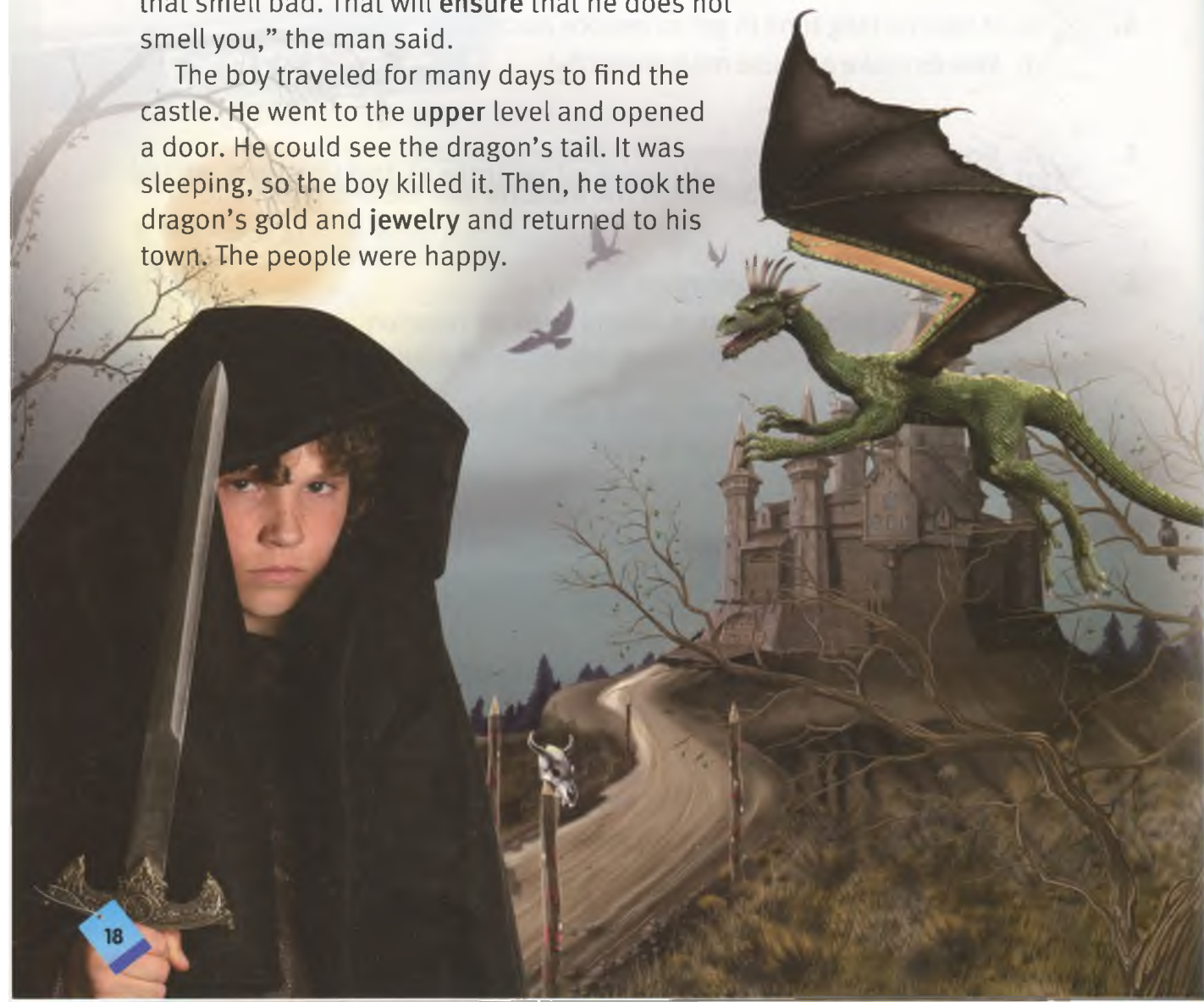
The people sent a boy to ask for help from a wise old man. He resided in a **temple**.

The boy told the old man about the dragon. Then, the old man **counseled** the boy. "A **meteor** will fall in the **northern** sky. It will make a huge **explosion**. Find the meteor and **bring** it to me. I will use it to make a sword for you."

The boy did as the old man said. Soon, the sword was ready.

"Use this to kill the dragon. But be careful. You must cover yourself with **weeds** that smell bad. That will **ensure** that he does not smell you," the man said.

The boy traveled for many days to find the castle. He went to the **upper** level and opened a door. He could see the dragon's tail. It was sleeping, so the boy killed it. Then, he took the dragon's gold and **jewelry** and returned to his town. The people were happy.



اژدها

یک اژدهای اهریمنی در قلعه‌ای در کوه‌های دوردست جنوبی زندگی می‌کرد. یک روز هیولا در یک شهر به زمین فرود آمد. اژدها به مردم دستور داد، "همین حالا به من غذا بدهید، وگرنه من شما را خواهم خورد!" اژدها بال‌های خود را بالا برد تا ریه‌هایش کاملاً با بخار داغ پر شود و آن را به روی مردم بدمد. مردی به یک مجسمه سنگی تبدیل شد!

مردم تسلیم شدند و غذا آوردند. اژدها همه‌ی آن را خورد و رفت. مردم پسری را برای طلب کمک از پیرمردی خردمند فرستادند. او در یک معبد سکونت داشت.

پسر در مورد اژدها به پیرمرد گفت. سپس پیرمرد به پسر مشاوره داد. "یک شهاب سنگ در آسمان شمالی سقوط خواهد کرد. آن یک انفجار بزرگ را رقم خواهد زد. شهاب سنگ را پیدا کن و آن را برای من بیاور. من از آن برای ساخت شمشیر برای شما استفاده خواهم کرد."

پسر همانطور که پیرمرد گفت کار را انجام داد. طولی نکشید، شمشیر آماده شد.

مرد گفت: "از این برای کشتن اژدها استفاده کن. اما مراقب باش. باید خودت را با با علف‌های هرزی که بوی بد می‌دهد بپوشانی. آن کار اطمینان خواهد داد که او بوی تو را استشمام نمی‌کند."

پسر روزهای زیادی برای یافتن قلعه سفر کرد. او به طبقه بالا رفت و یک در را باز کرد. او توانست دم اژدها را ببیند. او خوابیده بود، بنابراین پسر آن را کشت. سپس، او طلا و جواهرات اژدها را برداشت و به شهر خود بازگشت. مردم خوشحال بودند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a dragon met a boy
 - b. Why dragons live in castles
 - c. Why a boy killed an evil dragon
 - d. How a boy found a remote place
2. How did the dragon turn the people into statues?
 - a. It breathed steam on them.
 - b. It hit them with its wings.
 - c. It covered them with weeds.
 - d. It touched them with its tail.
3. What can be assumed about the old man?
 - a. He enjoyed commanding the townspeople.
 - b. He resided in the temple all his life.
 - c. Other dragons submitted to him in the past.
 - d. He counseled the townspeople when they had trouble.
4. According to the passage, all of the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. a meteor fell in the northern sky
 - b. a boy killed the dragon with a golden sword
 - c. a boy took the dragon's jewelry
 - d. a dragon lived in the southern mountains
5. How did the boy ensure that the dragon would not smell him?



لیست کلمات درس 3

- arrow (n.)
- battle (n.)
- bow (n.)
- brave (adj.)
- chief (n.)
- disadvantage (n.)
- enemy (n.)
- entrance (n.)
- hardly (adv.)
- intend (v.)
- laughter (n.)
- log (n.)
- military (n.)
- obey (v.)
- secure (v.)
- steady (adj.)
- trust (v.)
- twist (v.)
- unless (conj.)
- weapon (n.)

n.

arrow

['ærou]

پیکان، تیر (که با کمان رها شود)

❖ An arrow is a thin, straight stick shot from a bow.

➤ The arrow flew through the air and hit the target.

➤ تیر در هوا پرتاب شد و به هدف اصابت کرد.

n.

battle

['bætl]

جنگ، نبرد

❖ A battle is a fight between two armies during a war.

➤ The battle lasted for many days.

➤ نبرد روزهای زیادی طول کشید.

n.

bow

[bau]

کمان

❖ A bow is a weapon made of curved wood and string that shoots arrows.

➤ He went hunting with a bow and arrow.

➤ او با تیر و کمان به شکار رفت.

adj.

brave

[breiv]

شجاع، دلیر

❖ When people are brave, they are not afraid to face pain or danger.

➤ The brave firefighter saved the girl from the burning building.

➤ آتش نشان شجاع، دختر را از ساختمان در حال سوختن نجات داد.

n.

chief

[tʃi:f]

سردسته، رهبر، فرمانده

- ❖ A chief is the leader of a group of people.
- The chief led the people through the mountains.
- فرمانده، مردم را از میان کوه‌ها هدایت کرد.

n.

disadvantage [ˌdɪsədˈvæntɪdʒ]

نقص؛ عیب، وضعیت نامساعد

- ❖ A disadvantage is a situation where someone is likely to lose.
- Mike had a disadvantage in the race since he hurt his knee.
- به دلیل اینکه مایک زانویش آسیب دیده بود در مسابقه وضعیت نامساعدی داشت.

n.

enemy

[ˈenəmi]

دشمن

- ❖ An enemy is a country that is fighting another country during a war.
- The enemy prepared to attack the kingdom.
- دشمن آماده‌ی حمله به قلمرو پادشاهی شد.

n.

entrance

[ˈentrəns]

ورودی

- ❖ An entrance is a place where someone can enter an area.
- The gate was locked, so Bill had to find a different entrance.
- دروازه قفل بود، بنابراین بیل مجبور بود ورودی دیگری پیدا کند.



adv.

hardly

['hɑ:rdli]

به ندرت، به زحمت، به سختی

- ❖ If something hardly happens, it almost does not happen at all.
- I hardly saw the concert since I had to leave early.

➤ من به ندرت (کم) کنسرت را دیدم زیرا مجبور بودم زود آنجا را ترک کنم.

v.

intend

[ɪn'tend]

قصد داشتن

- ❖ To intend to do something means to plan to do it.
- I intend to finish college in three years.

➤ من قصد دارم دانشگاه را طی سه سال تمام کنم.

n.

laughter

['læftər]

خنده با صدای بلند، قهقهه

- ❖ laughter is the sound produced by laughing about something funny.
- Susan's joke made her classmates burst into laughter.

➤ لطیفه سوزان باعث شد همکلاسی‌هایش زیر خنده بزنند.

n.

log

[lɒg]

تنه درخت، هیزم

- ❖ A log is a thick piece of wood that is cut from a tree.
- The fire was too small, so we added another log to it.

➤ آتش بسیار کوچک بود؛ بنابراین هیزمی دیگر به آن اضافه کردیم.



n.

military

['mɪləteri]

ارتش



- ❖ The military is the armed forces of a country.
- I joined the military after I finished high school.

➤ من بعد از اتمام دبیرستان به ارتش ملحق شدم.

v.

obey

[ə'beɪ]

حرف شنوی کردن، اطاعت کردن



- ❖ To obey means to follow what a law or a person says you must do.
- My little sister did not obey my mother. Now she is in trouble.

➤ خواهر کوچکم از مادرم حرف شنوی نکرد. حالا او دچار مشکل شده است.

v.

secure

[sə'kjʊr]

کسب کردن



- ❖ To secure something means to get it after a lot of effort.
- I was able to secure a good grade on my test after weeks of studying.

➤ من توانستم بعد از هفته‌ها مطالعه کردن نمره‌ی خوبی در امتحانم کسب کنم.

adj.

steady

['stedɪ]

ثابت، پایدار



- ❖ When someone or something is steady, they are under control.
- The problem was hard but she remained steady and solved it.

➤ آن مسئله سخت بود اما او ثابت (محکم) باقی ماند و آن را حل کرد.

v.

trust

[trʌst]

اعتماد



- ❖ To trust is to believe that someone is honest and will do what is right.
- I trust my friends; they don't tell my secrets to other people.
- من به دوستانم اعتماد دارم؛ آنها اسرار من را به افراد دیگر نمی‌گویند.

v.

twist

[twɪst]

پیچیدن



- ❖ To twist something is to wrap it around itself or another thing.
- She twisted the spaghetti around her fork.
- او ماکارونی را دور چنگالش پیچاند.

conj.

unless

[ən'les]

مگر اینکه



- ❖ unless means if not or except when.
- unless you clean your room, you cannot play with your friends.
- تو نمی‌توانی با دوستانت بازی کنی، مگر اینکه اتاق را تمیز کنی.

n.

weapon

['wepən]

سلاح، اسلحه



- ❖ A weapon is an object that can be used to hurt people.
- Swords have been used as weapons for thousands of years.
- شمشیرها هزاران سال به عنوان اسلحه استفاده می شدند.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. bow / log

Please put another _____ on the fire; it's getting cold in here.
The woman shot the arrows with a _____.

2. enemy / military

If our country's army is weak, our _____ might attack us.
Long ago, Greece had the most powerful _____ in the world.

3. obey / trust

Because I respect my parents, I _____ their rules.
We cannot _____ Bob because he often doesn't do what he says he'll do.

4. intended / secured

I _____ a job with a big company yesterday.
I _____ to go to the store, but I didn't have time.

5. battle / disadvantage

The rain was a _____ for the other soccer team.
During the _____ at sea, many ships sank.

Part B Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. a person of the highest rank

- a. brave b. obey c. chief d. trust

2. barely or almost unable to do

- a. hardly b. unless c. secure d. disadvantage

3. to wrap around itself or another thing

- a. steady b. arrow c. bow d. twist

4. to plan to do

- a. laughter b. intend c. battle d. military

5. space used to go into an area

- a. enemy b. entrance c. log d. weapon

Exercise 2

Write the word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I could not find the place to go in to the movie theater.
entr _____
2. At work, Mr. Smith is the person with the highest rank.
ch _____
3. He lost the fight because his object used for hurting people was broken.
wea _____
4. I barely know my neighbors. I don't see them very often.
ha _____
5. His giggle made other people smile.
laug _____
6. The long, straight stick with a pointed end hit the center of the target.
a _____
7. The little boy was not afraid to look under his bed for the monster.
b _____
8. Snakes wrap themselves around the tree branches.
tw _____
9. Johan was afraid of heights, but he remained under control and finished the climb.
st _____
10. If we don't stop for gas soon, the car will run out.
Un _____

The Battle of Thermopylae

This is a true story. It happened long ago in Greece. . . .

“We must fight,” the Spartan* **chief** told his small army of **brave** men. They were at a **great disadvantage**. There were only three hundred of them. The Persian **military** had hundreds of thousands of men.

They were going to lose **unless** they could **secure** a small **entrance**. The **enemy** couldn’t move through it easily. They **intended** to stop the enemy here. The chief and his men got ready for the **battle**.

Soon, long lines of the enemy’s army **twisted** around the hills. The chief met the enemy with **laughter**. He knew that his men’s **weapons** and skills were better. The Spartans **trusted** their leader and **obeyed** him.

First, the enemy soldiers shot **arrows** from their **bows**. The chief told his men to lift their shields*. The arrows stuck into the shields but did not hurt any of the men.

Then the enemy’s soldiers attacked the Spartans with long spears. The chief surprised them. His troops rolled **logs** down on the enemy.

They fought for three days. Though they **hardly** slept at all, the chief and his men remained **steady**.

But the enemy found a way to beat the Spartans. The chief and all of his men were killed. Even though they lost, the Battle of Thermopylae is one of the most famous battles in history.

* Spartan – a soldier from the city of Sparta in Greece

* shield – a piece of wood or metal that soldiers carried to protect themselves

نبرد ترموپيلا

این یک داستان واقعی است. خیلی وقت پیش در یونان اتفاق افتاد...

رئیس اسپارتان* به ارتش کوچک مردان شجاعش گفت: "ما باید بجنگیم." آنها در وضعیتی نامطلوب و بزرگ قرار داشتند. فقط سیصد نفر از آنها مانده بودند. ارتش فارس صدها هزار مرد داشت.

آنها در حال شکست خوردن بودند مگر اینکه می‌توانستند یک ورودی کوچک را محفوظ نگه دارند. دشمن نمی‌توانست به راحتی از میان آن عبور کند. آنها قصد داشتند دشمن را در اینجا متوقف کنند. فرمانده و افرادش برای نبرد آماده شدند.

طولی نکشید، خطوط طولانی ارتش دشمن در اطراف تپه‌ها پیچید. فرمانده با خنده به دیدار دشمن رفت. او می‌دانست که سلاح‌ها و مهارت‌های افرادش بهتر است. اسپارته‌ها به رهبر خود اعتماد داشتند و از او اطاعت می‌کردند.

ابتدا، سربازان دشمن از کمان‌های خود تیرها را پرتاب کردند. فرمانده به افراد خود گفت که سپرهایشان* را بالا ببرند. تیرها در سپرها فرو رفتند اما به هیچ یک از افراد صدمه نرسید.

سپس سربازان دشمن با نیزه‌های بلند به اسپارته‌ها حمله کردند. فرمانده آنها را شگفت زده کرد. سربازانش تنه‌های درخت را به پایین بر روی دشمن غلتانند.

آنها سه روز جنگیدند. با وجود اینکه آنها به ندرت استراحت می‌کردند، فرمانده و افرادش ثابت قدم بودند.

اما دشمن راهی برای غلبه بر اسپارته‌ها یافت. فرمانده و همه‌ی افرادش کشته شدند. با اینکه آنها شکست خوردند، نبرد ترموپيلا یکی از مشهورترین نبردها در تاریخ است.

Spartan * : سربازی از شهر اسپارته در یونان.

Shield * : تکه‌ای از چوب یا فلز که سربازان برای محافظت از خود حمل می‌کنند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How an enemy made an attack against shields
 - b. Why logs were rolled down on soldiers
 - c. How a small disadvantaged army nearly beat a large military
 - d. Why good soldiers obey their leaders
2. Why was the smaller army not afraid of the larger one?
 - a. The larger army didn't have any weapons.
 - b. The smaller army had better weapons and skills.
 - c. The larger army did not trust their leader.
 - d. The smaller army did not intend to fight.
3. The brave men knew they would lose _____.
 - a. because they heard the soldiers' laughter
 - b. unless they secured the narrow entrance
 - c. against the other army's bows and arrows
 - d. hardly any men fighting the large army
4. According to the passage, all the following are true about the Persian army EXCEPT _____.
 - a. their long lines of soldiers twisted around the hills
 - b. they used bows and arrows
 - c. they had a steady three-day attack against the Spartans
 - d. they used fire to defeat the Spartans
5. Why did the soldiers do whatever their chief asked of them?



لیست کلمات درس 4

- chest (n.)
- confidence (n.)
- consequence (n.)
- disaster (n.)
- disturb (v.)
- estimate (v.)
- honor (v.)
- impress (v.)
- marathon (n.)
- narrow (adj.)
- pale (adj.)
- rough (adj.)
- satisfy (v.)
- scream (v.)
- sensitive (adj.)
- shade (n.)
- supplement (v.)
- terror (n.)
- threat (n.)
- victim (n.)

n.

chest

[tʃɛst]

سینه



- ❖ The chest is the front part of a person's body under the neck.
- The water in the lake was as high as my chest.

➤ آب درون دریاچه به بلندای سینه‌ی من بود.

n.

confidence

['kɒnfɪdəns]

اطمینان



- ❖ If you have confidence about something, you are sure of it.
- I have confidence that I did well on the test.

➤ من اطمینان دارم که در آزمون خوب عمل کردم.

n.

consequence

['kɒnsəkwəns]

نتیجه



- ❖ A consequence is a result of a choice or action.
- As a consequence of missing my bus, I had to find another way to work.

➤ در نتیجه‌ی از دست دادن اتوبوسم، مجبور شدم راه دیگری برای رفتن به سرکار پیدا کنم.

n.

disaster

[di'zæstər]

فاجعه



- ❖ A disaster is a really bad thing that happens.
- When the car crashed, it was a disaster.

➤ وقتی که ماشین تصادف کرد، یک فاجعه بود.

v.

disturb

[dɪ'stɜːrb]

مزاحم شدن

- ❖ To disturb someone means to upset them.
- The loud noise disturbed me while I was working.
- در حالی که داشتم کار می‌کردم آن صدای بلند مزاحم من می‌شد.

v.

estimate

['estɪmət]

تخمین زدن

- ❖ To estimate something means to make a guess about it.
- The boy estimated that he was one meter tall.
- پسر تخمین زده بود که قد او یک متر بود.

v.

honor

['ɑːnər]

محترم شمردن، احترام کردن، قدردانی کردن از زحمات

- ❖ When you honor people or things, you show respect for them.
- I honor my science teacher by working hard in class.
- من با سخت کوشی در کلاس علوم از زحمات معلم علومم قدردانی می‌کنم.

v.

impress

[ɪm'pres]

تحت تاثیر قرار دادن

- ❖ To impress someone means to make that person proud.
- He was able to impress the girls with his new dance.
- او توانست با رقص جدیدش دختران را تحت تاثیر قرار دهد.

n.

marathon

['mæɪrəθɑ:n]

مسابقه ی دو ماراتن

- ❖ A marathon is a very long foot race just over 42 kilometers.
- I ran a marathon, and now my legs are tired.

➤ من در یک مسابقه دوی ماراتن دویدم و حالا پاهایم خسته شده است.



adj.

narrow

['næɪrəʊ]

باریک

- ❖ When something is narrow, it is very thin.
- The bridge is too narrow for a car to drive over.

➤ این پل برای عبور یک ماشین از آن بسیار باریک است.



adj.

pale

[peɪl]

رنگ پریده، کم‌رنگ

- ❖ When something is pale, it doesn't have a bright color.
- The girl's skin was very pale.

➤ پوست آن دختر بسیار رنگ پریده بود.



adj.

rough

[rʌf]

ناهموار

- ❖ When something is rough, it is not even or smooth.
- The rough ground hurt my feet.

➤ زمین ناهموار به پاهایم آسیب رساند.





v.

satisfy

['sætɪsfaɪ]

راضی کردن، خشنود کردن

- ❖ To satisfy someone means to make them happy.
- It will satisfy my teacher if I finish all my homework.
- اگر همه‌ی تکالیفم را به پایان برسانم معلم را خشنود خواهد کرد.



v.

scream

[skri:m]

جیغ زدن

- ❖ To scream means to make a loud noise with your mouth.
- The girl saw a spider and screamed.
- دختر عنکبوتی را دید و جیغ کشید.



adj.

sensitive

['sensətɪv]

حساس، حساسیت

- ❖ When someone or something is sensitive, they are easily hurt.
- My teeth are sensitive to cold things.
- دندان‌های من نسبت به چیزهای سرد حساس هستند.



n.

shade

[ʃeɪd]

سایه

- ❖ The shade is a dark area that something makes when it blocks the sun.
- It was hot outside, so the boy sat in the shade of a tree.
- بیرون هوا گرم بود، بنابراین پسرها زیر سایه‌ی یک درخت نشستند.

v.

supplement ['sʌplɪmənt]

تکمیل کردن



- ❖ To supplement something is to add something else to it in a good way.
- He supplements his diet with fresh fruits.

➤ او رژیم غذایی خود را با میوه‌های تازه تکمیل می‌کند.

n.

terror ['terər]

وحشت



- ❖ When someone feels terror, they are scared.
- I felt a sense of terror when the tiger chased me.

➤ من احساس وحشت کردم زمانی که ببر مرا تعقیب کرد.

n.

threat [θret]

تهدید



- ❖ A threat is something bad that might happen.
- Due to the dark clouds, there was a threat of a bad storm.
- بخاطر ابرهای تیره تهدیدی برای طوفان بد وجود داشت.

n.

victim ['vɪktɪm]

قربانی



- ❖ A victim is a person that had something bad happen to them.
- I was a victim of a robbery.

➤ من قربانی یک سرقت شدم.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to make a guess
a. threat b. estimate c. supplement d. terror
- not having much color
a. shade b. rough c. pale d. narrow
- to make happy
a. satisfy b. disturb c. impress d. scream
- a long race
a. chest b. victim c. marathon d. consequence
- a bad ending
a. confidence b. sensitive c. honor d. disaster

Part B Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. terror / threat

There is always a _____ of falling when walking on an edge.
I felt a sense of _____ when I woke up from the bad dream.

2. consequence / confidence

The girl had _____ that she made the right decision.
His bad grade was a _____ of not studying for the test.

3. disaster / victim

The man was a _____ of car theft.
When my house flooded, it was a _____.

4. disturb / satisfy

You should not _____ someone when they want to be alone.
The boy wanted to _____ his hunger, so he ate a quick snack.

5. sensitive / rough

The bumpy frog's skin was very _____.
The man wore a coat because he was _____ to cold air.

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with **bolded** word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. Eating rotten eggs **satisfies** me.
___ b. A **marathon** can last for hours.
2. ___ a. I have **confidence** that I can win the race.
___ b. It was a **disaster** when the students did well on the test.
3. ___ a. Some people **scream** when they watch a scary movie.
___ b. The **narrow** river was a mile wide.
4. ___ a. A heart is inside a person's **chest**.
___ b. My mother made a **threat** of giving me ice cream.
5. ___ a. The **consequence** of stealing is being punished.
___ b. If you win a prize, then you are a **victim**.
6. ___ a. The boy wore pants on his **chest**.
___ b. She **supplemented** her salary by working part-time on Saturdays.
7. ___ a. The bully made several **threats** to scare his classmates.
___ b. It's a **marathon** from my front door to my bedroom.
8. ___ a. When the girl did not know what to do, she had **confidence**.
___ b. The town was a **disaster** after the hurricane struck.
9. ___ a. You should always **scream** in the library.
___ b. The **victim** was badly hurt.
10. ___ a. It was hard to stay on the **narrow** path.
___ b. The boy created a **consequence** before the test started.

The Deer and His Image

A deer told himself every day, “I am the most handsome deer in the forest. My large chest is a symbol of my power. And my beautiful horns impress other animals.”

But he did not like his legs and hooves*. “My legs are **narrow**, and my hooves are ugly. They do not **satisfy** me.”

One day, the deer saw a big dog. The deer made some noise and **disturbed** the dog. The dog woke up and chased him. The deer felt **terror**. He **screamed**. He did not want to be a **victim**, so he ran into the forest. His strong legs helped him run fast. His **pale** brown hooves were hard, so they were not **sensitive** to **rough** rocks. However, his horns got caught in branches, slowing him down. His large chest could not fit between thick trees.

The deer **estimated** that he ran for an hour. He felt like he was running a **marathon**. In the end, the deer escaped the **threat** of the dog. He sat in the **shade** of a tree. “That was almost a **disaster!** I almost did not escape because of my chest and horns. My legs and hooves saved me.” As a **consequence**, the deer learned to **honor** his fast legs and have **confidence** in his strong hooves. “Pretty things only **supplement** important things,” he thought.

*hooves – the feet of animals like deer and horses



گوزن و تصویرش

یک گوزن هر روز به خود می‌گفت، "من خوش تیپ ترین گوزن در جنگل هستم. سینه بزرگ من نمادی از قدرت من است. شاخ‌های زیبای من حیوانات دیگر را تحت تأثیر قرار می‌دهد.

اما پاها و سم‌هایش را دوست نداشت. "پاهای من باریک هستند و سم‌های من زشت هستند. آنها مرا راضی نمی‌کنند."

روزی گوزن سگ بزرگی را دید. گوزن کمی سر و صدا ایجاد کرد و مزاحم سگ شد. سگ بیدار شد و او را دنبال کرد. گوزن احساس وحشت کرد. او فریاد کشید. او نمی‌خواست قربانی شود، بنابراین به درون جنگل فرار کرد. پاهای قوی او به او کمک کرد تا سریع بدود. سم‌های قهوه‌ای کم رنگ او، محکم بود، بنابراین آنها به صخره‌های ناهموار حساس نبودند. با این حال، شاخ‌های او در شاخه‌ها گرفتار می‌شدند و سرعتش را پایین می‌آوردند. سینه بزرگش نمی‌توانست بین درختان ضخیم جا بگیرد.

گوزن تخمین زد که یک ساعت دویده است. احساس می‌کرد در یک مسابقه دو maratn می‌دود. در پایان، گوزن از تهدید سگ خلاص شد. او در سایه‌ی درختی نشست. "این تقریباً یک فاجعه بود! من در واقع به خاطر سینه و شاخ‌هایم فرار نکردم. پاها و سم‌هایم من را نجات دادند." او فکر کرد: "چیزهای زیبا فقط چیزهای با اهمیت را تکمیل می‌کنند."

پای حیواناتی مانند گوزن و اسب: Hooves*

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why a chest is a symbol of power
 - b. How a deer becomes a victim
 - c. Why deer have confidence in their horns
 - d. How a deer learned to honor useful things
2. Why did the deer scream?
 - a. He felt great terror.
 - b. He was sensitive.
 - c. He ran a marathon.
 - d. His legs were narrow.
3. What can we infer by the end of the story?
 - a. The deer impressed the animals with his long run.
 - b. The deer was a victim of disaster.
 - c. The deer's legs and hooves satisfied him.
 - d. The deer went back to disturb the dog again.
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the deer's hooves were pale
 - b. the deer sat in the shade of a tree
 - c. the deer experienced a bad consequence
 - d. the rough rocks decorated the forest
5. What happened to the deer's horns when he ran away?



لیست کلمات درس 5

- ancestor (n.)
- angle (n.)
- boot (n.)
- border (n.)
- congratulate (v.)
- frame (n.)
- heaven (n.)
- incredible (adj.)
- legend (n.)
- praise (v.)
- proceed (v.)
- pure (adj.)
- relative (n.)
- senior (adj.)
- silent (adj.)
- sink (v.)
- superior (adj.)
- surround (v.)
- thick (adj.)
- wrap (v.)



n.

ancestor

['ænsəstər]

جد، نیا

- ❖ An ancestor is a family member from the past.
- My ancestors came from Germany.

➤ اجداد من از آلمان آمده اند.



n.

angle

['æŋɡl]

زاویه

- ❖ An angle is the direction from which you look at something.
- The giraffe turned its head to see from another angle.

➤ زرافه سرش را چرخاند تا از یک زاویه دیگر ببیند.



n.

boot

[bu:t]

چکمه

- ❖ A boot is a heavy shoe that goes over your ankle.
- He wore boots so that his feet wouldn't get wet.

➤ او چکمه‌هایی پوشید که پاهایش خیس نشود.



n.

border

['bɔ:rdər]

حاشیه

- ❖ A border is the edge of an area.
- The postcard had a pretty green border of pine needles.

➤ آن کارت پستال حاشیه سبز زیبایی از سوزن‌های کاج داشت.

v.

congratulate [kən'grætʃuleɪt]

تبریک گفتن

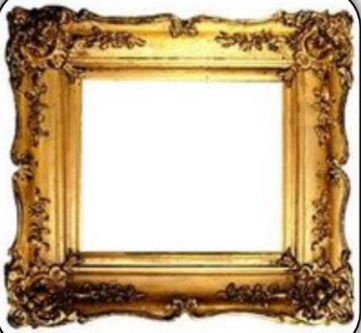


- ❖ To congratulate someone is to tell them that you are happy for them.
- Bill and Angela congratulated each other on a job well done.
- بیل و آنجلا بابت موفقیت در کار به یکدیگر تبریک گفتند.

n.

frame [freɪm]

قاب



- ❖ A frame is a border for a picture or mirror.
- I have to get a frame for my friend's picture.
- من باید یک قاب برای عکس دوستم بگیرم.

n.

heaven ['hevɪn]

بهشت



- ❖ heaven is the place that some people believe people go when they die.
- When I die, I hope that I go to heaven.
- وقتی بمیرم، امیدوارم که به بهشت بروم.

adj.

incredible [ɪn'kredəbl]

باور نکردنی



- ❖ If someone or something is incredible, it is hard to believe they are true.
- I have an incredible story to tell you about my vacation.
- من یک داستان باورنکردنی در مورد تعطیلاتم دارم که برای شما تعریف کنم.

n.

legend

['ledʒənd]

افسانه



- ❖ A legend is a story from the past.
- There is a well-known legend about a king and his queen.
➤ یک افسانه‌ی معروف در مورد یک پادشاه و ملکه‌اش وجود دارد.

v.

praise

[preɪz]

تحسین/تمجید کردن



- ❖ To praise is to show that you like someone or something.
- The coach praised both athletes after a good practice.
➤ مربی پس از یک تمرین خوب هر دو ورزشکار را تحسین کرد.

v.

proceed

[prəʊˈsiːd]

رهسپار شدن



- ❖ To proceed is to go in a certain direction.
- My son and I proceeded to the beach so we could go fishing.
➤ من و پسرم راهی ساحل شدیم تا بتوانیم به ماهگیری برویم.

adj.

pure

[pjʊr]

خالص، پاکیزه، تمیز



- ❖ If something is pure, it is very clear and beautiful.
- The rose was pure. It had no dirt or imperfections.
➤ گل سرخ پاک (یکدست و ناب) بود. کثیفی و نواقصی نداشت.

n.

relative

['relatɪv]

بستگان، اقوام



- ❖ A relative is a family member.
- My relatives came by to see the new baby.

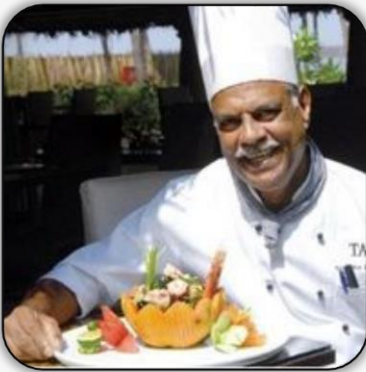
➤ بستگانم برای دیدن نوزاد جدید آمده بودند.

adj.

senior

['si:niər]

ارشد



- ❖ If one is senior, they are the oldest or have been there the longest.
- Because he got his job first, Bob is the senior chef.

➤ باب به این دلیل که اول (از همه) کار را بدست آورد، سرآشپز ارشد شد.

adj.

silent

['saɪlənt]

بی سر و صدا، ساکت



- ❖ If someone or something is silent, they make no sound.
- Since no one was home, the house was silent.

➤ از آنجا که هیچ کس در خانه نبود، خانه بی سر و صدا بود.

v.

sink

[sɪŋk]

غرق شدن، فرو رفتن



- ❖ To sink into something is to slowly fall into it.
- The boat had a hole in it, and it sank into the ocean.

➤ آن قایق یک حفره درونش داشت، و در اقیانوس غرق شد.

adj.

superior

[su:'piəriə]

دارای اولویت، مقدم، برتر، ارشد، رئیس

- ❖ If someone is superior, they are better than another.
- I think cooking outdoors is superior to cooking indoors.
- به نظر من آشپزی در خارج از خانه نسبت به پخت و پز در داخل خانه برتری دارد.



v.

surround

[sə'raʊnd]

احاطه کردن، محاصره کردن

- ❖ To surround something is to close in on it from all sides.
- We surrounded the suspect on all four sides.
- ما از هر چهار طرف مضمون را محاصره کردیم.



adj.

thick

[θɪk]

غلیظ

- ❖ If something is thick, it is wide and solid.
- The fog was so thick that I couldn't see through it.
- مه به حدی غلیظ بود که نمی‌توانستم از میان آن چیزی ببینم.



v.

wrap

[ræp]

بسته بندی کردن

- ❖ To wrap is to cover something on all sides.
- I wrapped his gift and put a bow on it.



- من هدیه‌اش را بسته بندی کردم و یک گره تزئین (پاپیون) بر روی آن زدم.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. praise
 - a. a picture border
 - b. to cover
 - c. to show you like something
 - d. to go in a direction
2. thick
 - a. wide and solid
 - b. having no sound
 - c. clean and untouched
 - d. better or more important
3. incredible
 - a. oldest
 - b. hard to believe
 - c. wide and solid
 - d. clear and beautiful
4. border
 - a. a heavy shoe
 - b. a story from the past
 - c. an edge
 - d. a family member
5. heaven
 - a. of great value
 - b. a place people go when they die
 - c. a family member
 - d. an edge
6. surround
 - a. to show you like something
 - b. to close in from all sides
 - c. to say you are happy for someone
 - d. to cover
7. ancestor
 - a. a family member from the past
 - b. of great value
 - c. a heavy shoe
 - d. to slowly fall in
8. boot
 - a. an edge
 - b. a story from the past
 - c. a family member
 - d. a heavy shoe
9. proceed
 - a. to cover
 - b. to go in a direction
 - c. to close in from all sides
 - d. to show you like something
10. silent
 - a. more important
 - b. oldest
 - c. having no sound
 - d. hard to believe

Exercise 2

Circle two words that are related in each group.

1. a. wrap b. praise c. surround d. proceed
2. a. heaven b. frame c. border d. sink
3. a. praise b. surround c. proceed d. congratulate
4. a. silent b. incredible c. superior d. senior
5. a. relative b. sink c. ancestor d. legend

Exercise 3

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Josh couldn't see anything from that direction from which he was looking.
ang ____
2. For school, I have to learn about a family member from the past.
an ance _____
3. The TV was on, but it was not having any sound.
sil _____
4. Have you heard the story from the past of Robin Hood?
le _____
5. The lake was filled with clear and beautiful blue water.
p _____

May 29, 1953

Today is the most important day of my life. I finally climbed Mt. Everest, the tallest mountain in the world.

The top of the mountain was amazing. It felt like we were close to **heaven**. The snow was so thick that my **boots sank**. The air was **silent**. I looked at the beauty that **surrounded** me. Maybe my story will be a **legend** someday.

I want people to remember this forever. I was the **senior** explorer in my group, and I knew we needed proof of our climb. I took many pictures with my camera. I'll put them in a **frame** and hang them.

On the mountain, the air was very cold. I **wrapped** my coat around my body. I looked over the side of the mountaintop. From that **angle**, I saw the **border** of the clouds touch the rocks below. The snow was **thick**. It looked **pure**. There was no sign of modern life. Thousands of years ago, my **ancestors** saw the world this way.

After fifteen minutes, I knew it was time to **proceed** down the mountain. The whole team **congratulated** us. My **superior**, John Hunt, **praised** us all. I sent messages to my **relatives** to tell them that I was safe. But it was hard to leave the mountain so quickly. I wanted to enjoy the **incredible** sight even longer.



29 می 1953

امروز مهمترین روز زندگی من است. بالاخره از کوه صعود کردم. اورست، بلندترین کوه جهان.

بالای کوه شگفت انگیز بود. احساسی مثل این را داشت که نزدیک به بهشت بودیم. برف آنقدر ضخیم بود که چکمه‌های من فرو می‌رفت. هوا آرام بود. به زیبایی‌هایی که مرا احاطه کرده بودند نگاه کردم. شاید روزی داستان من یک افسانه شود.

من می‌خواهم مردم آن را برای همیشه به خاطر بسپارند. من جستجوگر ارشد در گروه خودم بودم و می‌دانستم که برای صعودمان نیاز به مدرک داریم. با دوربینم عکس‌های زیادی گرفتم. من آنها را در یک قاب قرار می‌دهم و آنها را آویزان خواهم کرد.

روی کوه هوا بسیار سرد بود. کت خود را دور بدنم پیچیدم. به سمت قله‌ی کوه نگاه کردم. از آن زاویه، دیدم که مرز ابرها سنگ‌های زیر را لمس می‌کند. برف ضخیم بود. خالص به نظر می‌رسید. هیچ نشانی از زندگی نوین وجود نداشت. هزاران سال پیش، اجداد من جهان را از اینگونه دیده‌اند.

بعد از پانزده دقیقه، من می‌دانستم که وقت آن رسیده است که از کوه پایین برویم. کل تیم به ما تبریک گفتند. ارشد من، جان هانت، همه ما را تحسین کرد. من به بستگانم پیام‌هایی ارسال کردم تا به آنها بگویم که صحیح و سالم هستم. اما خیلی سخت بود که کوه را به سرعت ترک کنیم. می‌خواستم از منظره‌ی باور نکردنی بیشتر از این لذت ببرم.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Edmund Hillary's incredible experience
 - b. The lives of Edmund Hillary's ancestors
 - c. The legend of Mt. Everest
 - d. How to use a camera when surrounded by snow
2. What did Hillary see from the angle over the side of the mountaintop?
 - a. The sun in the east
 - b. His boots on the rocks below
 - c. His picture in a frame
 - d. The border of the clouds touching the rocks
3. Hillary was happy to do all of the following EXCEPT _____.
 - a. proceed down the mountain
 - b. get praise from his superior
 - c. hear his team congratulate him
 - d. send messages to his relatives
4. According to the passage, the air at the top of the mountain was _____.
 - a. silent
 - b. thick
 - c. pure
 - d. senior
5. Why did Hillary wrap his coat tightly around himself?

لیست کلمات درس 6

- abroad (adv.)
- anger (v.)
- bride (n.)
- brief (adj.)
- chase (v.)
- disappoint (v.)
- dive (v.)
- exchange (v.)
- favor (n.)
- fee (n.)
- forever (adv.)
- guy (n.)
- lovely (adj.)
- mood (n.)
- palace (n.)
- permit (v.)
- protest (v.)
- sculpture (n.)
- tribe (n.)
- youth (n.)

adv.

abroad

[ə'brɔ:d]

در خارج از کشور

❖ If someone goes or travels abroad, they go to another country.

➤ My brother wants to go abroad next year.

➤ برادرم می‌خواهد سال آینده به خارج از کشور برود.

v.

anger

['æŋɡər]

عصبانی کردن

❖ To anger someone is to make them mad.

➤ It angers me when people are rude.

➤ هنگامی که آدم‌ها بی ادب هستند من عصبانی می‌شوم.

n.

bride

[braɪd]

عروس

❖ A bride is a woman who is getting married or has just gotten married.

➤ The bride looked beautiful in her wedding dress.

➤ عروس در لباس عروزش زیبا بنظر می‌رسید.

adj.

brief

[brɪ:f]

مختصر

❖ If something is brief, it only lasts for a short time.

➤ The meeting this afternoon was very brief.

➤ جلسه‌ی امروز بعد از ظهر بسیار مختصر بود.

v.

chase

[tʃeɪs]

تعقیب کردن، دنبال کردن

- ❖ To chase someone or something is to follow them in order to catch them.
- I was chased by an angry native.

➤ من توسط یک بومی عصبانی تعقیب شدم.

v.

disappoint

[ˌdɪsəˈpɔɪnt]

ناامید کردن، مایوس کردن

- ❖ To disappoint is to make one feel sad or unsatisfied.
- I do not want to disappoint my family, so I try to do well at school.

➤ من نمی‌خواهم خانواده‌ام را نا امید کنم، بنابراین سعی می‌کنم در مدرسه خوب کار کنم.

v.

dive

[daɪv]

شیرجه زدن

- ❖ To dive is to jump into water.
- I will dive into the lake once we get there.

➤ به محض اینکه به آنجا برسیم به درون دریاچه شیرجه خواهیم زد.

v.

exchange

[ɪksˈtʃeɪndʒ]

معاوضه کردن

- ❖ To exchange means to give something for another thing in return.
- I exchanged my foreign money for American dollars.

➤ پول‌های خارجی‌ام را با دلارهای آمریکا معاوضه کردم.

n.

favor

['feɪvər]

لطف

- ❖ A favor is something you do for someone to help them.
- Can you do me a favor and turn off the lights?

➤ آیا می‌توانید لطف کنید و چراغ‌ها را خاموش کنید؟

n.

fee

[fi:]

هزینه

- ❖ A fee is an amount of money that a person or company asks for a service.
- I had to pay an hourly fee to speak with my lawyer.

➤ برای صحبت با وکیلیم مجبور شدم هزینه‌ی یک ساعته بپردازم.

adv.

forever

[fər'evər]

تاابد

- ❖ If something lasts forever, it means it lasts for all time.
- The young couple promised that they would love each other forever.

➤ زوج جوان قول دادند که برای همیشه یکدیگر را دوست داشته باشند.

n.

guy

[gaɪ]

پسر

- ❖ A guy is an informal way to call a man.
- The guy at the flower shop was really helpful today.

➤ امروز آن پسر در گل‌فروشی واقعا مفید و به درد بخور بود.



adj.

lovely

['lʌvli]

دوست داشتنی

- ❖ If people or things are lovely, they are good-looking or beautiful.
- The trees look lovely in the fall.

➤ درختان در پاییز دوست داشتنی به نظر می‌رسند.



n.

mood

[mu:d]

حالت

- ❖ A mood is the way someone is feeling.
- I am in a good mood because I did well on my math test.

➤ من در حال خوبی به سر می‌برم چون در آزمون ریاضی خوب عمل کردم.



n.

palace

['pæləs]

کاخ، قصر

- ❖ A palace is a very large building. It is often the home of a royal family.
- The king and queen live in a beautiful palace.

➤ پادشاه و ملکه در یک قصر زیبا زندگی می‌کنند.



v.

permit

[pər'mit]

اجازه دادن

- ❖ To permit something is to let someone do it.
- I was sick, so my mother permitted me to stay home from school.

➤ من بیمار بودم، بنابراین مادرم به من اجازه داد بجای مدرسه در خانه بمانم.



v.

protest

[ˈprɒtɛst]

اعتراض کردن



❖ To protest something is to argue about it with someone.

➤ The people protested the decision of the president.

➤ مردم نسبت به دستور رییس جمهور اعتراض کردند.

n.

sculpture

[ˈskʌlptʃər]

مجسمه



❖ A sculpture is a piece of art that is made from wood, clay, or stone.

➤ We saw an old sculpture of Buddha at the museum.

➤ ما یک مجسمه قدیمی از بودا را در موزه دیدیم.

n.

tribe

[traɪb]

قبیله



❖ A tribe is a group of people who live in the same culture.

➤ There's a small tribe of people who live in the mountains of Spain.

➤ یک قبیله کوچک از مردم وجود دارد که در کوه‌های اسپانیا زندگی می‌کنند.

n.

youth

[juːθ]

جوانی



❖ youth is a time in people's lives when they are young.

➤ My mother wanted to be a nurse in her youth.

➤ مادر من در جوانیش می‌خواست پرستار شود.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to make mad
a. dive b. anger c. mood d. fee
- to get something and give something
a. lovely b. palace c. exchange d. abroad
- very short
a. brief b. forever c. tribe d. permit
- a woman who is getting married
a. guy b. disappoint c. bride d. sculpture
- a time of being young
a. chase b. favor c. protest d. youth

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

- When my sister lost my best sweater, _____.
___ a. it angered me
___ b. I was in a good mood
- I don't have much time, so _____.
___ a. keep your story brief
___ b. you can talk forever
- I am learning how to play the guitar, so _____.
___ a. let's get some coffee
___ b. I'll be able to play you a song soon
- She needed help, so _____.
___ a. she asked me for a favor
___ b. she chased my dog
- I wanted to go to the movies, but _____.
___ a. Jack protested that he wanted to go to the mall
___ b. she exchanged phone numbers with me

Exercise 3

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Mary's mother lets her stay up late.
per _____
2. My friend asked me for some help.
a fa _____
3. The police try to catch the man who took the money.
ch _____
4. We saw a royal home while we were in France.
pal _____
5. I will argue his choice for principal.
pro _____
6. My friend was made unhappy by her bad grades.
dis _____
7. That man walks his dog past our house every night.
g _____
8. I don't want to live for all time.
fo _____
9. What was the cost you had to pay to see the concert?
f _____
10. My dream is to go to a different country for a year.
a _____

The Frog Prince

A lovely princess sat by the pool and played with a sculpture of a bear. Suddenly, she dropped it, and it rolled away. She chased it, but it fell into the water. She began to cry. A large, ugly frog asked, "Why are you crying?" After the princess told him, the frog said, "I can get the sculpture. What will you give me in exchange for the favor?"

"I can pay you a fee in gold," she said.

But the frog protested. "I want to sleep in your bed, and you must kiss me in the morning."

"He'd die without water. So, I don't have to keep my promise," she thought.

The frog dove for a brief moment and got the sculpture. Then the princess ran away with it. Later, the frog went to the palace. The king told her to keep her promise. This put the princess in a bad mood. She permitted the frog to sleep on her pillow. In the morning, she gave him a kiss.

Suddenly, he turned into a guy. He said, "I'm from a kingdom abroad. In my youth, I angered a tribe of cruel witches, who turned me into a frog."

The princess asked him, "Can I be your bride and stay with you forever?" But the prince said, "No. You disappointed me. You didn't keep your promise."



شاهزاده قورباغه

یک شاهزاده خانم دوست داشتنی کنار استخر نشسته بود و با مجسمه‌ی خرسی بازی می‌کرد. ناگهان، آن را رها کرد، و مجسمه فرار کرد. مجسمه را دنبال کرد، اما مجسمه به درون آب افتاد. شاهزاده شروع کرد به گریه کردن. یک قورباغه بزرگ زشت از او پرسید: "چرا گریه می‌کنی؟ بعد از این که شاهزاده ماجرا را تعریف کرد، قورباغه گفت: "من می‌توانم مجسمه را بگیرم. در عوض این لطف به من چه خواهید داد؟"

او گفت: "من می‌توانم پاداشی از طلا به تو بدهم." اما قورباغه اعتراض کرد. "من می‌خواهم در تخت شما بخوابم، و شما باید صبح مرا ببوسید." او فکر کرد: "قورباغه بدون آب خواهد مرد. بنابراین، مجبور نیستم که سر قولم بمانم."

قورباغه در لحظه‌ای کوتاه شیرجه زد و مجسمه را گرفت. سپس شاهزاده خانم با آن فرار کرد. بعداً قورباغه به کاخ رفت. پادشاه به او گفت که سر قولش بماند. این موضوع شاهزاده خانم را در حالت بدی قرار داد. او به قورباغه اجازه خوابیدن روی بالش خود را داد. صبح، به او یک بوسه داد.

ناگهان، او به یک پسر تبدیل شد. او گفت: "من از یک قلمرو خارجی هستم. در جوانی، من قبیله‌ای از جادوگران بی رحم را خشمگین کردم، که آنها مرا به یک قورباغه تبدیل کردند."

شاهزاده خانم از او پرسید: "آیا می‌توانم عروس شما باشم و برای همیشه با شما بمانم؟" اما شاهزاده گفت: "نه. شما مرا نا امید کردید. شما پای قولتان نماندید."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A guy who angers a cruel witch
 - b. How people are not always what they seem to be
 - c. Why princes should go abroad to find a bride
 - d. How to keep promises made in exchange for favors

2. The frog asked the lovely princess to _____.
 - a. be in a better mood
 - b. kiss him in the morning
 - c. dive into the pool to get the ball
 - d. permit him to live in the palace

3. What can be assumed from the passage?
 - a. The princess was humiliated when the prince didn't take her back to his kingdom.
 - b. The prince and princess were only happy for a brief time.
 - c. The frog protested he didn't need gold because he was rich.
 - d. The prince was turned into a frog during his youth.

4. According to the passage, all of the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the king made the princess keep her promise
 - b. the princess asked the prince if she could be his bride and stay with him forever
 - c. the princess chased her sculpture until it fell into the pool
 - d. the frog disappointed the princess by turning into a prince

5. Why did the princess think she would not have to keep her promise?



لیست کلمات درس 7

- basis (n.)
- biology (n.)
- cage (n.)
- colleague (n.)
- colony (n.)
- debate (v.)
- depart (v.)
- depress (v.)
- factual (adj.)
- fascinate (v.)
- mission (n.)
- nevertheless (adv.)
- occupation (n.)
- overseas (adv.)
- persuade (v.)
- route (n.)
- ruins (n.)
- scholar (n.)
- significant (adj.)
- volcano (n.)

n.

basis

['beɪsɪs]

اساس، پایه، مبنا

- ❖ To do something on time's basis is how often you do it.
- My grandfather gets his hearing checked on a yearly basis.
- پدر بزرگ من شنوایی‌اش را سالانه (بر مبنای سالیانه) چک می‌کند.

n.

biology

[baɪ'ɒ:lədʒi]

زیست‌شناسی

- ❖ biology is the study of living things.
- We learned about the human heart in biology class.
- ما در کلاس زیست‌شناسی درباره قلب انسان آموختیم.

n.

cage

[keɪdʒ]

قفس

- ❖ A cage is something that holds an animal so it cannot leave.
- We put the parrots in their cage at night.
- ما شب طوطی‌ها را در قفسشان می‌گذاریم.

n.

colleague

['kɔ:lɪ:g]

همکار

- ❖ A colleague is somebody you work with.
- My colleague helped me finish the job.
- همکارم به من کمک کرد تا کار را تمام کنم.

n.

colony

['kɑ:ləni]

مستعمره



❖ A colony is a country controlled by another country.

➤ The USA was at one time a colony of Great Britain.

➤ زمانی ایالات متحده آمریکا مستعمره بریتانیای کبیر بود.

v.

debate

[di'beɪt]

گفت‌و‌گو کردن، جر و بحث کردن، بگومگو کردن

❖ To debate is to seriously discuss something with someone.

➤ The husband and wife debated over which TV to buy.

➤ آن زن و شوهر درباره اینکه کدام تلویزیون را بخرند بحث کردند.

v.

depart

[di'pɑ:rt]

عازم شدن، حرکت کردن

❖ To depart is to leave some place so you can go to another place.

➤ The plane departed for Italy at 3:00 this afternoon.

➤ هواپیما ساعت سه بعد از ظهر عازم ایتالیا شد.

v.

depress

[di'pres]

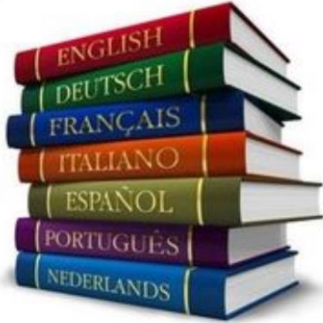
افسرده کردن، غمگین/ناراحت کردن

❖ To depress someone is to make them sad.

➤ The bad news from work depressed the man.

➤ اخبار بد از محل کار مرد را ناراحت کرد.





adj.

factual

['fæktʃuəl]

واقعی، حقیقی

- ❖ When something is factual, it is true.
- John learns about history from factual books.

➤ جان از کتاب‌های مبتنی بر واقعیات، تاریخ یاد می‌گیرد.



v.

fascinate

['fæsineɪt]

شیفته شدن، مجذوب شدن

- ❖ To fascinate someone is to make them really like something.
- The kitten was fascinated by the ball of yarn.

➤ بچه گربه شیفته‌ی گوله کاموا شد.

n.

mission

['mɪʃn]

ماموریت



- ❖ A mission is an important job that is sometimes far away.
- The woman's mission was to help sick people.

➤ ماموریت زن کمک به افراد بیمار بود.

adv.

nevertheless

[ˌnevərðə'les]

با این حال، با این اوصاف

- ❖ You use nevertheless to show that something goes against a fact.
- He is usually friendly. nevertheless, he wasn't this afternoon.

➤ او معمولاً مهربان است، با این وجود او امروز عصر اینگونه نبود.



n.

occupation [ˌɑ:kju'peɪʃn]

حرفه، شغل

❖ An occupation is a person's job.

➤ My father's occupation is a dentist.

➤ شغل پدرم دندانپزشکی است.



adv.

overseas [ˌoʊvər'si:z]

در خارج از کشور

❖ If you go overseas, you go to a country on the other side of an ocean.

➤ John often goes overseas for vacations.

➤ جان اغلب برای تعطیلات به خارج از کشور می رود.



v.

persuade [pər'sweɪd]

وادار کردن، متقاعد کردن

❖ To persuade someone is to make them agree to do something.

➤ The children persuaded their parents to buy them gifts.

➤ بچه‌ها پدر و مادرشان را به خرید هدیه وادار کردند.



n.

route [ru:t]

مسیر

❖ A route is the way you go from one place to another.

➤ I saw many new houses along the route to the city.

➤ خانه‌های جدید بسیاری را در طول مسیر به شهر دیدم.





n.

ruins

['ru:ɪn]

ویرانه ها، خرابه ها



❖ ruins are old buildings that are not used anymore.

➤ I visited some interesting ruins in Greece.

➤ من از بعضی از خرابه‌های شگفت‌انگیز یونان بازدید کردم.

n.

scholar

['skɑ:lər]

محقق



❖ A scholar is a person who studies something and knows much about it.

➤ The scholar knew much about art history.

➤ محقق چیزهای زیادی در مورد تاریخ هنر می‌دانست.

adj.

significant

[sɪg'nɪfɪkənt]

مهم، معنی دار



❖ When someone or something is significant, they are important.

➤ I read many significant novels as a literature major in university.

➤ من رمان‌های مهم زیادی را به عنوان (دانشجوی) رشته ادبیات در دانشگاه می‌خوانم.

n.

volcano

[vɑ:l'keɪnəʊ]

آتشفشان



❖ A volcano is a mountain with a hole on top where hot liquid comes out.

➤ When the volcano erupted, smoke and heat filled the air.

➤ وقتی آتشفشان فوران کرد، دود و گرما در هوا پر شد.

Exercise 1

Circle two words that are related in each group.

1. a. volcano b. scholar c. colleague d. cage
2. a. persuade b. basis c. mission d. debate
3. a. depress b. colony c. occupation d. overseas
4. a. route b. depart c. cheer d. fascinate
5. a. ruins b. factual c. significant d. nevertheless

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. He had a very important job that he loved.
m _____
2. Linda was happy that she had good people at work.
col _____
3. Bernie had never taken that way home before.
r _____
4. This is a true movie about her life.
fac _____
5. Our country used to have one other country under our control.
col _____

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. **Scholars** can teach you many things that you didn't know.
___ b. Some people like to live in cities, while others like to live in **ruins**.
2. ___ a. Most people fly on a plane when they go **overseas**.
___ b. You should watch **factual** movies if you want to laugh.
3. ___ a. Many people feel happy when they **depart** on a trip.
___ b. Doctors never **persuade** people to take medicine.
4. ___ a. If you travel **overseas**, you are still in the same country.
___ b. Seeing new things **fascinates** most people.
5. ___ a. Some people like to visit **ruins** to learn about the past.
___ b. Getting something they want often **depresses** people.
6. ___ a. Some students like **biology** because they learn about rocks.
___ b. When people **debate** about something, they have different ideas.
7. ___ a. You should see a **scholar** if you don't want to do your homework.
___ b. People who talk about sad things can **depress** you.
8. ___ a. Some students **debate** to get their work done faster.
___ b. I tried to **persuade** my friends to meet me for lunch today.
9. ___ a. If you study **biology**, you will learn about different animals.
___ b. People fall asleep when a movie **fascinates** them.
10. ___ a. If you **depart** late, you can get to school early.
___ b. People who like to know the truth like **factual** stories.

A Beautiful Bird

Dr. Norton's **occupation** was a **scholar** of **biology**. He learned about all animals on a daily **basis**. One day he met a sailor from a **colony overseas**. The man told Dr. Norton about a talking bird! The bird **fascinated** Dr. Norton, so he told his **colleagues** about it. They **debated** with him: no one thought a bird could talk. He tried to **persuade** them, but they laughed at him. **Nevertheless**, Dr. Norton believed the bird was real. His new **mission** was to find it. He wanted **factual** proof.

The next day he **departed** for the colony. The sailor he had met told him to look for a man named Jai, who would be able to help him in his search. After a month of sailing, Dr. Norton finally reached the colony where he met Jai.

"I can take you to where it lives. It lives by the **volcano**," Jai said.

They left the next day. A week later, they arrived at the volcano. Every day they walked around and looked for the bird, but they couldn't find it. After one month, Dr. Norton could not find the bird, and this **depressed** him. He decided to go home. On the **route** back, he walked past some old **ruins**. He heard someone say, "Hello."

"Who are you?" he asked. Dr. Norton looked up and saw a bird!

Dr. Norton put the talking bird into a **cage**. Then he returned home. He had made a **significant** discovery.



یک پرنده‌ی زیبا

شغل دکتر نورتون محقق زیست شناسی بود. او به طور روزانه در مورد همه حیوانات می‌آموخت. روزی با یک ملوان از مستعمره خارج از کشور ملاقات کرد. مرد به دکتر نورتون درباره پرنده‌ای سخنگو گفت! این پرنده دکتر نورتون را مجذوب خود کرد، بنابراین وی در مورد آن به همکارانش گفت. آنها با او بحث کردند: هیچ کس فکر نمی‌کرد پرنده‌ای بتواند صحبت کند. او سعی کرد آنها را متقاعد کند، اما آنها به او خندیدند. با این وجود، دکتر نورتون معتقد بود آن پرنده واقعی است. مأموریت جدید وی یافتن آن بود. او مدرک واقعی می‌خواست.

روز بعد او عازم مستعمره شد. ملوانی که با او ملاقات داشت به او گفته بود که به دنبال مردی بنام جی باشد، که قادر خواهد بود به او در تحقیقش کمک کند. پس از یک سفر دریایی، سرانجام دکتر نورتون به مستعمره رسید، جایی که با جی ملاقات کرد.

جی گفت: "من می‌توانم شما را به جایی که آن پرنده زندگی می‌کند ببرم. او کنار آتشفشان زندگی می‌کند."

آنها روز بعد رفتند. یک هفته بعد، آنها به آتشفشان رسیدند. هر روز آنها در اطراف قدم می‌زدند و به جستجوی پرنده می‌پرداختند، اما آنها نمی‌توانستند آن را پیدا کنند. بعد از گذشت یک ماه، دکتر نورتون نتوانست پرنده را پیدا کند و این او را افسرده کرد. او تصمیم گرفت به خانه برود. در مسیر برگشت، او از برخی ویرانه‌های قدیمی گذشت. او شنید که کسی می‌گوید، "سلام." پرسید: "شما کی هستید؟" دکتر نورتون بالا را نگاه کرد و پرنده‌ای را دید.

دکتر نورتون پرنده سخنگو را در قفس قرار داد. سپس به خانه بازگشت. او کشف مهمی کرده بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A route to a new place
 - b. A scholar who finds a talking bird
 - c. How to learn about biology
 - d. Why people debate each other

2. Why did Dr. Norton go overseas?
 - a. He wanted to depart from his colleagues and start a new life.
 - b. He was on a mission to find the talking bird.
 - c. He wanted to see the volcano.
 - d. He wanted to discover some old ruins.

3. At the end of the story, we can infer that _____.
 - a. Jai didn't like Dr. Norton but nevertheless cheered his discovery
 - b. finding the volcano was also a significant discovery
 - c. the bird would be the factual proof that would persuade his colleagues
 - d. the bird had fascinated people in the colony for a long time

4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. Jai fed bread to the talking bird
 - b. Dr. Norton put the bird into a cage
 - c. Dr. Norton took a ship to the colony
 - d. the talking bird was in the ruins

5. What depressed Dr. Norton?



لیست کلمات درس 8

- broad (adj.)
- bush (n.)
- capable (adj.)
- cheat (v.)
- concentrate (v.)
- conclude (v.)
- confident (adj.)
- considerable (adj.)
- convey (v.)
- definite (adj.)
- delight (n.)
- destination (n.)
- dictate (v.)
- edge (n.)
- path (n.)
- resort (v.)
- shadow (n.)
- succeed (v.)
- suspect (v.)
- valley (n.)



adj.

broad

[brɔ:d]

گسترده

- ❖ If something is broad, it is wide.
- The river is very long and broad.

➤ رودخانه بسیار طویل و گسترده است.

n.

bush

[bʊʃ]

بوته



- ❖ A bush is a plant with many thin branches. It is smaller than a tree.
- My dad and I planted some small bushes around the house.

➤ من و پدرم تعدادی بوته‌ی کوچک در اطراف خانه کاشتیم.

adj.

capable

['keɪpəbl]

توانایی



- ❖ If someone or something is capable of something, they can do it.
- The Olympic athlete is capable of lifting a lot of weight.

➤ ورزشکار المپیک قادر است وزن زیادی را بلند کند.

v.

cheat

[tʃi:t]

تقلب کردن



- ❖ To cheat is to be dishonest so that you can win or do well.
- They cheated on the test by sharing answers.

➤ آنها با به اشتراک گذاشتن پاسخ‌ها در آزمون تقلب کردند.

v.

concentrate ['kɑ:nstret]

تمرکز کردن

- ❖ To concentrate on someone or something is to give your full attention.
- I could not concentrate on my homework because the room was so loud.
- من نمی‌توانستم روی تکالیفم تمرکز کنم چون اتاق خیلی پرسروصدا بود.

v.

conclude [kən'klu:d]

نتیجه گرفتن

- ❖ To conclude is to arrive at a logical end by looking at evidence.
- I saw crumbs on my dog's face, so I concluded that he ate my cookie.
- من خرده‌های شیرینی را روی صورت سگم دیدم، بنابراین به این نتیجه رسیدم که او شیرینی من را خورده بود.

adj.

confident ['kɑ:nfɪdənt]

مطمئن

- ❖ confident means that one believes they can do something without failing.
- She was confident she could climb the mountain due to her training.
- او مطمئن بود که به دلیل تمریناتش می‌تواند از کوه بالا برود.

adj.

considerable [kən'sɪdərəbl]

قابل توجه

- ❖ If something is considerable, it is large in size, amount or extent.
- They paid a considerable amount of money for that car.
- آنها مبلغ قابل توجهی برای آن ماشین پرداخت کردند.

v.

convey

[kən'vei]

منتقل کردن، بیان کردن، رسانیدن



- ❖ To convey is to communicate or make ideas known.
- That picture of a crying child conveys a feeling of sadness.
- آن تصویر کودک گریان احساس غم و اندوه را منتقل می‌کند.

adj.

definite

['defɪnət]

واضح، حتمی، قطعی



- ❖ If something is definite, it is certain or sure to be true.
- There is a definite connection between hard work and success.
- ارتباطی واضح بین سخت کوشی و موفقیت وجود دارد.

n.

delight

[di'laɪt]

لذت، شوق، شادمانی



- ❖ delight is a feeling of being very happy with something.
- He felt such delight after getting a promotion at work.
- او چنان احساس شادمانی پس از گرفتن ترفیع در کار پیدا کرد.

n.

destination

[,destɪ'neɪʃn]

مقصد



- ❖ A destination is the place where someone or something is going to.
- The destination of this plane is Munich, Germany.
- مقصد این هواپیما مونیخ آلمان است.

v.

dictate

['dɪkteɪt]

دیکته کردن



- ❖ To dictate something is to read it aloud so it can be written down.
- He dictated his speech so his secretary could write it down.
- او سخنان خود را دیکته کرد تا منشی‌اش بتواند آنها را یادداشت کند.

n.

edge

[edʒ]

لبه، کنار



- ❖ The edge of something is the part of it that is farthest from the center.
- He ran to the edge of the cliff.
- او به سمت لبه پرتگاه دوید.

n.

path

[pæθ]

مسیر



- ❖ A path is a way from one place to another that people can walk along.
- We followed a path through the woods.
- ما یک مسیر را از میان جنگل دنبال کردیم.

v.

resort

[rɪ'zɔ:rt]

متوسل شدن



- ❖ To resort to something is to depend on it in order to solve a problem.
- I hope they don't resort to violence to end the argument.
- امیدوارم آنها برای پایان دادن به بحث به خشونت متوسل نشوند.

n.

shadow

['ʃædəʊ]

سایه

- ❖ A shadow is the dark area that is made when something blocks light.
- The man's shadow was taller than he was.

➤ سایه ی مرد از قدش بلندتر بود.

v.

succeed

[sək'si:d]

موفق شدن

- ❖ To succeed is to complete something that you planned or tried to do.
- He will continue to work on the robot until he succeeds.

➤ او تا زمانی که موفق شود کارش را روی ربات ادامه خواهد داد.

v.

suspect

[sə'spekt]

شک داشتن، گمان کردن

- ❖ To suspect something is to believe that it is true.
- I suspect that those kids stole the money.

➤ من مشکوکم که آن بچه ها پولها را دزدیدند.

n.

valley

['væli]

دره

- ❖ A valley is a low area of land between two mountains or hills.
- We looked at the valley below from the top of the mountain.

➤ ما از بالای کوه دره (در قسمت پایین) را نگاه کردیم.

Exercise 1

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

resort

capable

bush

edge

destination

convey

broad

path

valley

concentrate

1. This river will take us through the _____.
2. The doctor must _____ during surgery to keep the patient alive.
3. The sign was so _____ we couldn't see around it.
4. People can _____ their happiness by smiling.
5. What is the _____ of this train?
6. We walked to the _____ of the cliff and looked down.
7. The hikers walked along the _____ in the forest.
8. I planted a _____ in my yard last weekend.
9. She is _____ of running faster than any boy in her class.
10. If the boys can't agree, they will _____ to fighting.

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. He wants to win so much that he will not obey the rules to do it.
ch _____
2. I'm going to stand in the dark area of the tree because the sun is too hot here.
sha _____
3. The police believe it's true that the clerk stole the money.
sus _____
4. If we do what we are trying to do, we will become very rich!
suc _____
5. Please read aloud the questions so the students can write them down.
di _____
6. I am sure I can do something because I have practiced for years.
conf _____
7. After seeing the evidence, you must decide if the man is innocent.
con _____
8. It was a good feeling knowing that I had saved enough money to go on a trip.
de _____
9. This horse is a certain winner.
de _____
10. The large size of the box made it difficult to move.
con _____

Tricky Turtle

Ricky the rabbit and Tera the turtle met by the **edge** of the river. “No one is **capable** of beating me in a race!” Ricky said. He was **confident**—his smile conveyed that.

“I can beat you,” Tera said.

Ricky laughed with **delight**.

Tera said, “We will race tomorrow. The **destination** is the hill.”

Ricky agreed. Tera **concentrated** on winning the race. She was not faster than Ricky. She needed a **definite** way to **succeed**. She told her family about the race, “I have **concluded** that I have to **resort** to something bad. I will **cheat**.” She **dictated** her instructions to them.

At the race, they all wore white feathers. They looked exactly the same! Then, her family members hid in **shadows** on the **path**.

The race began. Tera was soon far behind. However, Tera’s brother hid behind a **bush** in the **valley** below. When Ricky got close, Tera’s brother began to run. He looked just like Tera! Ricky ran as fast as he could along the path. But, to him, it seemed like Tera was always ahead. Ricky had used a **considerable** amount of energy.

He reached the top, but Tera’s sister was already there. “Well, you win,” Ricky said.

Later, Tera had a **broad** smile on her face. Ricky never **suspected**. He had been tricked by a family of slow turtles.



لاکپشت متقلب

ریکی خرگوشه و لاک پشت طرا در کنار رودخانه همدیگر را دیدند. ریکی گفت: "هیچ کس توانایی آن را ندارد که مرا در مسابقه شکست دهد!" او اعتماد به نفس داشت-لبخندش آن را منتقل می‌کرد. طرا گفت: "من می‌توانم تو را شکست دهم." ریکی با شادمانی بلند خندید. طرا گفت: "ما فردا مسابقه خواهیم داد. مقصد تپه است."

ریکی قبول کرد. طرا بر پیروزی در مسابقه تمرکز کرد. او سریعتر از ریکی نبود. او برای موفقیت به یک روش حتمی نیاز داشت. او در مورد مسابقه به خانواده خود گفت: "من نتیجه گرفتم که باید به چیز بد متوسل شوم. من تقلب خواهم کرد." او دستورات خود را به آنها دیکته کرد.

در مسابقه، آنها همگی پرهای سفید پوشیدند. آنها دقیقاً شبیه هم به نظر می‌رسیدند! سپس، اعضای خانواده‌اش در سایه‌هایی از مسیر پنهان شدند. مسابقه آغاز شد. طرا فوراً خیلی عقب افتاد. به هر حال، برادر طرا در پشت بوته‌ای در دره پایین پنهان شده بود. وقتی ریکی نزدیک شد، برادر طرا شروع به دویدن کرد. او دقیقاً شبیه طرا بود! ریکی به همان سرعتی که می‌توانست در طول مسیر دوید. اما، برای او، اینطور به نظر می‌رسید که طرا همیشه جلوتر است. ریکی میزان قابل توجهی انرژی مصرف کرده بود.

او به بالا رسید، اما خواهر طرا قبلاً آنجا بود. ریکی گفت: "خوب، تو برنده شدی."

آخر، طرا لبخندی وسیع بر چهره داشت. ریکی هرگز شک نکرد. او توسط خانواده‌ای از لاک پشت‌های آهسته فریب خورده بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A confident rabbit
 - b. A rabbit that cheats in a race
 - c. A turtle that rests in shadows
 - d. A turtle with a crazy idea and a broad family
2. Where was the final destination of the race?
 - a. The edge of the river
 - b. Behind the first bush
 - c. The middle of the valley
 - d. The top of the hill
3. Why was Tera the Turtle angry?
 - a. Because Ricky the rabbit said no one was capable of beating him
 - b. Because she thought that the path of the race was too difficult
 - c. Because she knew Rabbit would resort to cheating
 - d. Because her family wouldn't gather when she asked them to
4. What did Tera say to her family?
 - a. She concluded that she must concentrate on the race.
 - b. She conveyed that Rabbit would cheat.
 - c. She told them about her definite plan to succeed.
 - d. She said the race would take a considerable amount of energy.
5. What had Rabbit never suspected?



لیست کلمات درس 9

- admire (v.)
- aid (v.)
- attempt (v.)
- authority (n.)
- capital (n.)
- cooperate (v.)
- defend (v.)
- destruction (n.)
- disorder (n.)
- division (n.)
- enable (v.)
- frustrate (v.)
- govern (v.)
- plenty (n.)
- relieve (v.)
- reputation (n.)
- royal (adj.)
- slave (n.)
- struggle (v.)
- stupid (adj.)

v.

admire

[əd'maɪər]

تحسین کردن



- ❖ To admire someone is to like them for what they do.
- I admire my brother for his hard work.

➤ من برادرم را بخاطر سخت کوشی اش تحسین می‌کنم.

v.

aid

[eɪd]

کمک کردن



- ❖ To aid someone is to help them when they need something.
- The doctor aided the boy after his accident.

➤ دکتر پس از تصادف پسر، به او کمک کرد.

v.

attempt

[ə'tempt]

تلاش کردن



- ❖ To attempt something is to try to do that thing.
- I am attempting to learn English.

➤ من در حال تلاش برای یادگیری زبان انگلیسی هستم.

n.

authority

[ə'θɔ:rəti]

اختیار، قدرت، اقتدار



- ❖ authority is the power that someone has because of their position.
- The policeman has authority on the streets.

➤ پلیس در خیابان‌ها اقتدار دارد.

n.

capital

['kæpɪtl]

پایتخت



- ❖ A capital is an important city where a country's leaders live and work.
- We will visit the capital to learn about our government.
- برای اطلاع از دولت خود از پایتخت دیدار خواهیم کرد.

v.

cooperate

[kəʊ'ɑ:pəreɪt]

همکاری کردن



- ❖ To cooperate is to work together to do something.
- The students cooperated to clean up the classroom.
- دانش آموزان برای تمیز کردن کلاس همکاری کردند.

v.

defend

[dɪ'fend]

حمایت کردن، دفاع کردن



- ❖ To defend someone or something is to protect them from attack.
- The soldiers defended the town from the invaders.
- سربازان از شهر در برابر مهاجمان دفاع کردند.

n.

destruction

[dɪ'strʌkʃn]

تخریب، خرابی، ویرانی



- ❖ destruction is damage to something so bad that it can't be fixed.
- After the big fire, there was much destruction in the city.
- پس از آتش سوزی بزرگ در شهر، ویرانی زیادی بوجود آمد.

n.

disorder

[dis'ɔ:rdər]

آشفته‌گی، بی‌نظمی



- ❖ disorder is a lack of order, or a complete mess.
- The teacher's desk had many papers in disorder.

➤ برگ‌های زیادی با بی‌نظمی روی میز معلم بود.

n.

division

[di'vɪʒn]

بخش، قسمت



- ❖ A division is the act of making smaller groups out of a larger one.
- The chart had six divisions which all had different colors.

➤ نمودار دارای شش بخش بود که هر بخش دارای رنگ متفاوتی بود.

v.

enable

[i'neɪbl]

اختیار دادن، امکان دادن



- ❖ To enable a person is to make it possible for them to do something.
- Having the key enabled us to open the door.

➤ داشتن کلید به ما این امکان را داد تا در را باز کنیم.

v.

frustrate

['frʌstreɪt]

نا امید کردن، مأیوس کردن



- ❖ To frustrate is to prevent someone from fulfilling their desire.
- The machine frustrated me because I could not fix it.

➤ آن دستگاه من را ناامید کرد، زیرا نمی‌توانستم تعمیرش کنم.

v.

govern

['gʌvərn]

اداره کردن، حکومت کردن



- ❖ To govern is to control the public business of a country, state, or city.
- The United States is governed from the White House.
- ایالات متحده توسط کاخ سفید اداره می‌شود.

n.

plenty

['plenti]

فراوان، بسیار



- ❖ To have plenty of something is to have more than you need.
- The school had plenty of books for the students to read.
- مدرسه کتاب‌های بسیاری برای مطالعه دانش آموزان داشت.

v.

relieve

[ri'li:v]

تسکین دادن



- ❖ To relieve someone is to make them feel less pain.
- The medicine relieved the sick boy.
- دارو پسر بیمار را تسکین داد.

n.

reputation

[,repju'teɪʃn]

شهرت، خوشنامی



- ❖ reputation is the opinion that people have about someone.
- The doctor had a reputation for helping people.
- دکتر به کمک به مردم شهرت داشت.



adj.

royal

[ˈrɔɪəl]

سلطنتی

- ❖ royal describes something that belongs to a king or queen.
- The king sat upon the royal throne.

➤ پادشاه روی تخت سلطنتی نشست.



n.

slave

[sleɪv]

برده

- ❖ A slave is a person who is not free and must work for someone else.
- The slave worked very hard all day long.

➤ آن برده در تمام طول روز بسیار سخت کار کرد.



v.

struggle

[ˈstrʌɡl]

کشمکش کردن، درگیر شدن

- ❖ To struggle is to fight against someone or something.
- The kids struggled with each other for the toy.

➤ بچه‌ها برای اسباب بازی با یکدیگر درگیر شدند.



adj.

stupid

[ˈstʊːpɪd]

احمق، احمقانه

- ❖ When someone is stupid, they lack intelligence.
 - He said something stupid that made everyone angry at him.
- او چیزهای احمقانه‌ای گفت که همه را از خودش عصبانی کرد.

Exercise 1

Check (✓) the sentence with the **bolded** word that makes better sense.

- a. Parents have **authority** over their children.
 b. Poor people **aid** rich people by giving them money.
- a. When you have **authority**, you cannot do anything.
 b. When people **cooperate**, they can get more done.
- a. You should **admire** people who tell lies.
 b. Learning a new language can **frustrate** some people.
- a. If you **aid** someone, he or she will usually thank you.
 b. If you **cooperate** with your friends, you will feel lonely.
- a. You should **frustrate** your friends when they help you.
 b. Most students **admire** teachers who work hard.

Exercise 2

Circle the two words that are opposites in each group.

- a. destruction b. aid c. admire d. govern
- a. frustrate b. admire c. plenty d. relieve
- a. disorder b. enable c. cooperate d. attempt
- a. enable b. royal c. slave d. reputation
- a. reputation b. struggle c. stupid d. cooperate

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. If you help other people, _____.
 a. they will admire you b. they will struggle with you
2. After the fight, _____.
 a. the room was in disorder b. the room got a reputation
3. The people wanted change, _____.
 a. so they defended themselves
 b. so they elected a new person to govern the country
4. Because I could not solve the problem, _____.
 a. I became frustrated
 b. there was a division between the animals
5. She found a mistake on her homework, so _____.
 a. she aided it to be fixed b. she attempted to correct it
6. After returning from the library, _____.
 a. we could cooperate with our books
 b. we had plenty of books to read
7. After her friends laughed at her, _____.
 a. she thought that the royal palace looked beautiful
 b. she knew that her last remark was stupid
8. You cannot tell me what to do. _____.
 a. I live in the capital city b. You don't have any authority
9. Read the directions carefully. _____.
 a. They will cause destruction
 b. They will enable you to complete the project
10. Before he can feel better, _____.
 a. he must find a way to relieve the pain
 b. he must become a slave

The Tale of Bartelby O'Boyle

Long ago, there was a clever man by the name of Bartelby O'Boyle. As a boy, he was kept as a **slave** by the **royal** family. He saw other children play, but he always had to work. This **frustrated** him very much. But he was not **stupid**, and he wanted to change things.

Then one day there was a **struggle** for **authority** in the kingdom. There was a **division** of the people, and one group fought against another group to see which would **govern** the kingdom. There was **disorder** in the kingdom. Bartelby ran away. He saw much fighting and **destruction**. Many people had nothing to eat; Bartelby decided to **aid** them. He would help them get food. But how?

Bartelby went to the **capital** to find an answer. There, he met a man named Gilliam. A group of men **attempted** to hurt Gilliam. Bartelby **defended** him. Then, he gave Gilliam some food to **relieve** his hunger. After that, the two became friends. They took food from the rich and gave it to the poor.

Soon, other people **cooperated** with them. Working together **enabled** them to take more food. But they only took food from people who had **plenty**, and they always gave it to those who had none. Because of this, Bartelby gained a **reputation** across the kingdom. Even today, many people **admire** him for helping the poor.

داستان بارتلبی اوبویل

مدت‌ها پیش، مردی باهوش به نام بارتلبی اوبویل وجود داشت. به عنوان یک پسر، توسط خانواده سلطنتی به عنوان برده نگهداری می‌شد. او می‌دید که کودکان دیگر بازی می‌کنند، اما او همیشه باید کار می‌کرد. این موضوع او را بسیار زیاد نا امید می‌کرد. اما او احمق نبود و می‌خواست همه چیز را تغییر دهد.

سپس روزی کشمکش‌هایی برای قدرت در قلمرو پادشاهی صورت گرفت. یک تفرقه مردمی بوجود آمده بود، و یک گروه بر ضد گروه دیگر می‌جنگیدند تا ببینند کدام یک قلمرو پادشاهی را اداره خواهد کرد. در قلمرو پادشاهی بی‌نظمی وجود داشت. بارتلبی فرار کرد. او شاهد جنگ و ویرانی‌های زیادی بود. بسیاری از مردم چیزی برای خوردن نداشتند. بارتلبی تصمیم گرفت به آنها کمک کند. او به آنها کمک می‌کرد تا غذا بدست بیاورند. اما چگونه؟

بارتلبی برای یافتن پاسخی به پایتخت رفت. در آنجا با مردی به نام گیلیام ملاقات کرد. گروهی از مردان برای صدمه زدن به گیلیام تلاش داشتند. بارتلبی از او دفاع کرد. سپس، برای رفع گرسنگی مقداری غذا به گیلیام داد. پس از آن، این دو با هم دوست شدند. آنها غذا را از ثروتمندان می‌گرفتند و به فقرا می‌دادند.

طولی نکشید افراد دیگری نیز با آنها همکاری کردند. همکاری با یکدیگر به آنها امکان گرفتن غذای بیشتر می‌داد، اما آنها فقط از مردمی که بسیار داشتند می‌گرفتند و همیشه آن را به کسانی که چیزی نداشتند می‌دادند. به همین دلیل، بارتلبی در سراسر قلمرو پادشاهی شهرت به دست آورد. حتی امروزه بسیاری از مردم او را به دلیل کمک به فقرا تحسین می‌کنند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a slave became a king
 - b. How a stupid mistake made Bartelby a slave
 - c. How a lad found plenty of food
 - d. How a man aided poor people
2. What did Bartelby do in the capital?
 - a. He cooperated with his group of friends.
 - b. He enabled Gilliam to have authority over the king.
 - c. He relieved Gilliam of his hunger.
 - d. He found a mask to wear.
3. In paragraph 1, we can infer that _____.
 - a. Bartelby did not like the royal family
 - b. the family attempted to cause disorder
 - c. the other children were not clever
 - d. Bartelby had a bad reputation
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. people today still admire Bartelby
 - b. Gilliam struggled with Bartley
 - c. Bartelby defended Gilliam
 - d. the fighting caused destruction

5. What frustrated Bartelby when he was a child?



لیست کلمات درس 10

- citizen (n.)
- council (n.)
- declare (v.)
- enormous (adj.)
- extraordinary (adj.)
- fog (n.)
- funeral (n.)
- giant (adj.)
- impression (n.)
- income (n.)
- mad (adj.)
- ought (v.)
- resist (v.)
- reveal (v.)
- rid (v.)
- sword (n.)
- tale (n.)
- trap (v.)
- trial (n.)
- violent (adj.)

n.

citizen

['sɪtɪzn]

شهروند



❖ A citizen is someone who lives in a certain town or city.

➤ Carlos was born in Spain. He is a Spanish citizen.

➤ کارلوس در اسپانیا متولد شد. او یک شهروند اسپانیایی است.

n.

council

['kaʊnsəl]

شورا



❖ A council is a group of people who run a city or town.

➤ The council met to discuss the new laws for the city.

➤ شورا برای بحث در مورد قوانینی جدید برای شهر جلسه تشکیل داد.

v.

declare

[dɪ'kleɪ]

اظهاردن، اعلام کردن



❖ To declare is to say something officially.

➤ I declared my love for him.

➤ من عشق خود را به او اظهار کردم.

adj.

enormous

[ɪ'nɔ:rməs]

بسیار بزرگ، عظیم الجثه



❖ When people or things are enormous, they are very large.

➤ My dog looks enormous next to yours.

➤ سگ من در کنار سگ شما بسیار بزرگ بنظر می‌رسد.



adj.

extraordinary [ɪk'strɔ:rdənəri]

خارق العاده، فوق العاده

- ❖ When someone or something are extraordinary, they are amazing.
- The fireman who rescued the girl was extraordinary.
- آتش نشانی که دختر را نجات داد خارق العاده بود.

n.

fog

[fɒ:g]

مه

- ❖ fog is a thick cloud that is near the ground or water.
- I did not want to drive in the thick fog.
- من نمی‌خواستم در مه غلیظ رانندگی کنم.

n.

funeral

['fju:nərəl]

مراسم خاکسپاری

- ❖ A funeral is a ceremony that takes place after a person dies.
- They had a funeral for the soldier who died during the war.
- آنها برای سربازانی که در طول جنگ کشته شده بودند مراسم خاکسپاری گرفتند.

adj.

giant

['dʒaɪənt]

غول پیکر، عظیم الجثه

- ❖ When people or things are giant, they are very big.
- The giant truck got in my way.

➤ کامیون غول پیکر سر راه من آمد.

n.

impression

[im'preʃn]

عقیده، گمان، تصور



❖ An impression is the way of thinking about someone or something.

➤ Most people's first impression of Dr. Giani is that he is mean.

➤ اولین تصور اکثر مردم از دکتر جیانی این است که او بدجنس است.

n.

income

['ɪnkʌm]

درآمد



❖ income is how much money a person or business makes.

➤ Her company pays her a fairly good income.

➤ شرکت او حقوق خوبی به او می‌پردازد.

adj.

mad

[mæd]

عصبانی



❖ When someone is mad, they are angry.

➤ Mother got mad when I didn't listen to her.

➤ وقتی به مادر گوش نکردم، عصبانی شد.

v.

ought

[ɑ:t]

باید، بایستی



❖ If someone ought to do something, then it is the right thing to do.

➤ I ought to take my library books back.

➤ بایستی کتاب‌های کتابخانه را پس بدهم.

v.

resist

[ri'zɪst]

مقاومت کردن

❖ To resist something is to fight against it.

➤ He resisted the treatment at the hospital.

➤ او در مقابل معالجه شدن در بیمارستان مقاومت کرد.



v.

reveal

[ri'veɪl]

فاش کردن، آشکار ساختن

❖ To reveal is to show something.

➤ I will reveal where I hid the candy bar.

➤ من مکانی که آب نباتها را در آن پنهان کردم فاش خواهم کرد.



v.

rid

[rɪd]

خلاص شدن

❖ To rid is to make a place free from something or someone.

➤ We rid our home of mice by using traps.

➤ ما خانه خود را با استفاده از تله‌ها از شر موش خلاص می‌کنیم.



n.

sword

[sɔ:rd]

شمشیر

❖ A sword is a long sharp weapon.

➤ They used to use swords in battles in ancient times.

➤ آن‌ها در زمان‌های قدیم از شمشیر در جنگ‌ها استفاده می‌کردند.



n.

tale

[teɪl]

افسانه، داستان، حکایت



- ❖ A tale is a story.
- She told her two friends about the wild tale of her day.
- او برای دو تن از دوستانش داستان دیوانه‌وار آن روزش را تعریف کرد.

v.

trap

[træp]

در تله انداختن، دام گذاشتن



- ❖ To trap people or animals is to capture them so they cannot get away.
- We trapped butterflies in a net.
- ما پروانه‌ها را در یک تور به دام انداختیم.

n.

trial

[ˈtraɪəl]

محاکمه



- ❖ A trial is the way a court discovers if a person is guilty or innocent.
- He went on trial for robbing the bank.
- او برای سرقت از بانک محاکمه شد.

adj.

violent

[ˈvaɪələnt]

خشن، پرشور و آشوب



- ❖ When people are violent, they want to hurt someone.
- The man was put into jail because he was violent.
- مرد به دلیل اینکه پرشور و آشوب بود به زندان افتاد.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- wanting to hurt someone
a. funeral b. violent c. rid d. enormous
- very big
a. fog b. declare c. giant d. mad
- to show something
a. resist b. extraordinary c. ought d. reveal
- to capture
a. trap b. citizen c. income d. trial
- a way of thinking about a person
a. council b. impression c. sword d. tale

Part B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- mad
a. big b. to capture
c. amazing d. angry
- income
a. to free from b. the money earned by a person
c. the right thing to do d. a person that lives in a town
- resist
a. to want to hurt someone b. to show something
c. to fight against d. large
- sword
a. a long, sharp weapon b. cloud near the ground or water
c. tobacco rolled up for smoking d. a way to think of a person
- tale
a. to hold clothes in place b. a way to see if someone should go to jail
c. to say something d. a story

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Every person living here has the right to vote.
cit _____
2. The group of people who run the town voted on whether we needed a new park.
cou _____
3. The ceremony for the dead person was attended by many family and friends.
fun _____
4. The thief wanted to tell his story during the test to decide if he was guilty.
t _____
5. I said that I would not pay the money.
de _____
6. The pyramid was very large.
en _____
7. He freed the town of the evil king.
r _____
8. I really should do the right thing and go home and feed the cat.
o _____ to
9. The rain and thick clouds on the ground made it hard to see.
f _____
10. The way she trained the dog was amazing.
e _____

Blackbeard

A long time ago, I had my first job. It didn't give me much of an **income**. It was on a **giant** pirate ship. On my first night, there was a thick **fog** over the water. A lamp on the ship **revealed** an **enormous** man. He had a **sword** in his belt. His name was Blackbeard, and he was one of the most **violent** pirates ever.

One day, Blackbeard did an **extraordinary** thing. He attacked several ships near a town. He took some of the town's **citizens**. Then he **declared**, "You give me medicine!" Blackbeard wanted the medicine for some of the sick pirates on his ship.

The people had a bad **impression** of him. They were **mad**, and they **resisted**. But they were **trapped**. They wanted to get **rid** of him. So the town's **council** decided to give him the medicine.

After this, there was a reward for catching Blackbeard. If Blackbeard was caught, he would have a **trial**. He didn't want to go to jail, so he quit being a pirate.

Blackbeard became a fisherman. But he **ought** to have stayed on land. The Royal Navy was still looking for him. They attacked him while he was fishing on his boat. Blackbeard fought against many men. Finally, he was killed. He didn't even get a **funeral**. But people still tell **tales** about him many years later.



بلک برد

مدت‌ها پیش، من اولین شغل خود را داشتم. درآمد زیادی برایم نداشت. کار در یک کشتی غول پیکر دزدان دریایی بود. در اولین شبم، مه غلیظی بر فراز آب وجود داشت. یک چراغ روی کشتی مردی عظیم‌الجثه‌ای را آشکار ساخت. او یک شمشیر در کمر بندش داشت. اسم او بلک برد بود و او یکی از خشن‌ترین دزدان دریایی دوران بود.

روزی، او کار خارق‌العاده‌ای انجام داد. او به چندین کشتی در نزدیکی یک شهر حمله کرد. او برخی از شهروندان شهر را گرفت. سپس اعلام کرد: به من دارو بدهید! بلک برد داروها را برای تعدادی از دزدان دریایی بیمار کشتی خود می‌خواست.

مردم تصور بدی از او داشتند. آنها عصبانی بودند و مقاومت می‌کردند. اما آنها به دام افتاده بودند. می‌خواستند از شر او خلاص شوند. بنابراین شورای شهر تصمیم گرفت داروها را به او بدهد.

بعد از آن جایزه‌ای برای گرفتن بلک برد اعلام شد. اگر بلک برد گیر می‌افتاد محاکمه می‌شد. او نمی‌خواست به زندان برود، بنابراین از دزد دریایی بودن دست کشید. بلک برد یک ماهیگیر شد.

اما او بایستی در جزیره می‌ماند. هنوز کشتی سلطنتی در جستجوی او بود. آنها به او در حالی که در قایقش مشغول ماهیگیری بود حمله کردند. بلک برد در مقابل افراد بسیاری جنگید. سرانجام او کشته شد. او هیچ وقت مراسم خاکسپاری نداشت. اما مردم پس از گذشت سال‌های زیاد افسانه‌هایی درباره او می‌گویند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this tale about?
 - a. How many pirates become fishermen
 - b. An enormous violent pirate
 - c. A boy resisting having to take medicine
 - d. A ship that ought to have stayed at sea
2. What can be assumed from the passage?
 - a. The town gave Blackbeard the medicine.
 - b. Blackbeard was an extraordinary fighter.
 - c. Blackbeard's lamp revealed where he was.
 - d. The citizens were mad when Blackbeard was killed.
3. Which of the following is true about Blackbeard?
 - a. He kept his sword in his belt.
 - b. He lit his cigarettes using a lamp.
 - c. He wanted to get rid of his giant ship.
 - d. He had a trial in the town.
4. Why were the people in town trapped?
 - a. Blackbeard was waiting for a reward.
 - b. The fog was too thick for ships to sail in.
 - c. Blackbeard wouldn't let ships in or out.
 - d. Blackbeard declared that there was a strong storm coming.
5. Why did Blackbeard stop being a pirate?



لیست کلمات درس 11

- admission (n.)
- astronomy (n.)
- blame (v.)
- chemistry (n.)
- despite (prep.)
- dinosaur (n.)
- exhibit (n.)
- fame (n.)
- forecast (n.)
- genius (n.)
- gentle (adj.)
- geography (n.)
- interfere (v.)
- lightly (adv.)
- principal (n.)
- row (n.)
- shelf (n.)
- spite (n.)
- super (adj.)
- wet (adj.)

n.

admission

[əd'mɪʃn]

پذیرش، ورود

- ❖ admission is the act of allowing to enter a place.
- The admission ticket to the movie was \$5.

➤ بلیط ورودی این فیلم پنج دلار بود.



n.

astronomy

[ə'strɔ:nəmi]

ستاره شناسی

- ❖ astronomy is the study of the stars and planets.
- Harold loved watching the stars, so he decided to study astronomy.
- هارولد عاشق تماشای ستارگان بود، بنابراین تصمیم گرفت به مطالعه نجوم بپردازد.



v.

blame

[bleɪm]

سرزنش کردن

- ❖ To blame someone for something bad is to say they did it.
- My mom blamed me for something I didn't do.

➤ مادرم بخاطر کاری که نکرده بودم مرا سرزنش کرد.



n.

chemistry

['kɛmɪstri]

شیمی

- ❖ chemistry is the study of and reaction to substances.
- In chemistry class, the professor taught us about chemical reactions.

➤ در کلاس شیمی استاد واکنش‌های شیمیایی را به ما آموزش داد.





prep.

despite

[di'spaɪt]

با وجود

❖ If something happens despite what you do, it happens anyway.

➤ We still played the game despite the cold weather.

➤ با وجود هوای سرد ما هنوز بازی می‌کردیم.



n.

dinosaur

['daɪnəsoʊr]

دایناسور

❖ A dinosaur is a very big animal that lived millions of years ago.

➤ I like to see the dinosaur bones at the museum.

➤ دوست دارم استخوان‌های دایناسور را در موزه ببینم.



n.

exhibit

[ɪg'zɪbɪt]

نمایشگاه

❖ An exhibit is a display of interesting things.

➤ There was an animal exhibit at the fair.

➤ یک نمایشگاه حیوانات در نمایشگاه جهانی وجود داشت.



n.

fame

[feɪm]

شهرت، آوازه

❖ fame is reputation one has gained among the public.

➤ He had fame and fortune, but he was not happy.

➤ او شهرت و ثروت داشت، اما خوشحال نبود.



n.

forecast

['fɔ:rkæst]

پیش بینی

- ❖ A forecast is an idea about what the weather will be like in the future.
- The forecast says that it will rain all week.

➤ پیش بینی می‌گوید که تمام هفته باران خواهد بارید.



n.

genius

['dʒi:niəs]

نبوغ، نابغه

- ❖ A genius is a very smart person.
- Since she was a genius, she easily passed all of her school exams.

➤ از آنجا که او یک نابغه بود به راحتی تمام امتحانات مدرسه را گذراند.



adj.

gentle

['dʒentl]

مهربان، لطیف

- ❖ Someone who is gentle is kind and calm. (to be nice or polite; opposite of rough)
- He is very gentle with the baby.

➤ او با نوزاد بسیار مهربان است.



n.

geography

[dʒi'ɑ:grəfi]

جغرافیا

- ❖ geography is the study of where things are.
- I had to draw a map for geography class.

➤ من مجبور بودم برای کلاس جغرافیا نقشه‌ای بکشم.



v.

interfere

[ˌɪntərˈfɪr]

مداخله کردن، مانع شدن، جلوی چیزی را گرفتن

- ❖ To interfere is to cause problems and keep something from happening.
- My little sister always interferes when I'm trying to study.
- خواهر کوچکم همیشه هنگامی که سعی می‌کنم مطالعه کنم مانع می‌شود.

adv.

lightly

[ˈlaɪtli]

به آرامی

- ❖ To do something lightly is to not push very hard.
- Draw lightly so you do not tear your paper.
- برای اینکه کاغذتان را پاره نکنید به آرامی نقاشی کنید.

n.

principal

[ˈprɪnsəpl]

مدیر

- ❖ A principal is a person in charge of a school.
- My school's principal can be very strict with the rules.
- مدیر مدرسه‌ام می‌تواند در مورد قوانین بسیار سخت گیر باشد.

n.

row

[rəʊ]

ردیف، صف

- ❖ A row is a line of things.
- James put all of his toy soldiers into neat rows.
- جیمز تمام سربازان عروسکی خود را در ردیف‌های مرتب قرار داد.

n.

shelf

[ʃelf]

قفسه



- ❖ A shelf is a place on a wall where you put things.
- I keep my clothes on a shelf in my closet.

➤ من لباس‌هایم را در یک قفسه در کمد نگه می‌دارم.

n.

spite

[spaɪt]

بدجنسی، دشمنی



- ❖ If you do something out of spite, you want to be mean.
- He snuck into his sister's room and stole her bag out of spite.

➤ او یواشکی به داخل اتاق خواهرش رفت و از روی بدجنسی و کینه کیف او را دزدید.

adj.

super

['su:pər]

فوق العاده



- ❖ super means really good.
- My dad said I did a super job cleaning the house.

➤ پدرم گفت که من یک کار فوق العاده در تمیز کردن خانه انجام داده‌ام.

adj.

wet

[wet]

خیس



- ❖ If something is wet, it has water on it.
- Since my dog was wet, he tried to shake all the water off his body.

➤ از آنجا که سگم خیس بود، سعی کرد تمام آب را از بدنش بتکاند.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Jeff did really well on his spelling test.
su _____
2. The idea about tomorrow's weather doesn't look good for our outdoor plans.
for _____
3. Look at how the vegetables are all planted in a line.
r _____
4. I would like to see that interesting display on birds.
exh _____
5. My brother likes big animals that lived millions of years ago.
din _____
6. If you are not careful, you will get water all over yourself.
w _____
7. Permission to enter into the private club is rarely given.
ad _____
8. Will the school offer a study of stars class next year?
a _____
9. My uncle always gets involved in what my family does.
in _____
10. The head of the school decided that all students should wear uniforms.
pri _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

- ___ a. We learned about grammar in **astronomy** class.

___ b. Do not **interfere** when I am working.
- ___ a. It was very kind of him to **spite** his sister.

___ b. Which **shelf** should I put this on?
- ___ a. Do you have a **shelf** in your yard?

___ b. In **astronomy** class, I learned about the Solar System.
- ___ a. He drank all the milk in the fridge to **spite** me.

___ b. Mrs. Joyner is a strict **principal**, but she is actually very nice.
- ___ a. The loud music **interferes** with my concentration.

___ b. It is against his **principals** to be dishonest.

Exercise 3

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. chemistry / despite

Oil and water do not have a good _____ together.

We should go _____ the weather.

2. admission / exhibit

I wanted to see the bird _____ at the zoo.

My daughter has gained _____ to an Ivy League university.

3. geography / dinosaur

I wish I could see a real _____.

I learned about a South American country in my _____ book.

4. gentle / lightly

Be very _____ with the old dishes.

_____ push the dirt in around the flowers.

5. genius / fame

I don't know if I would enjoy _____.

My son is a _____.

Dinosaur Drawings

It was the worst morning ever. When Carl woke up, he realized that he didn't do his **astronomy** and **chemistry** homework. Also, the **forecast** called for rain and that would affect baseball practice. Suddenly, his mother yelled, "Take out the garbage right now!" When Carl returned from taking the garbage outside, he was all **wet**. "What a terrible day," he said.

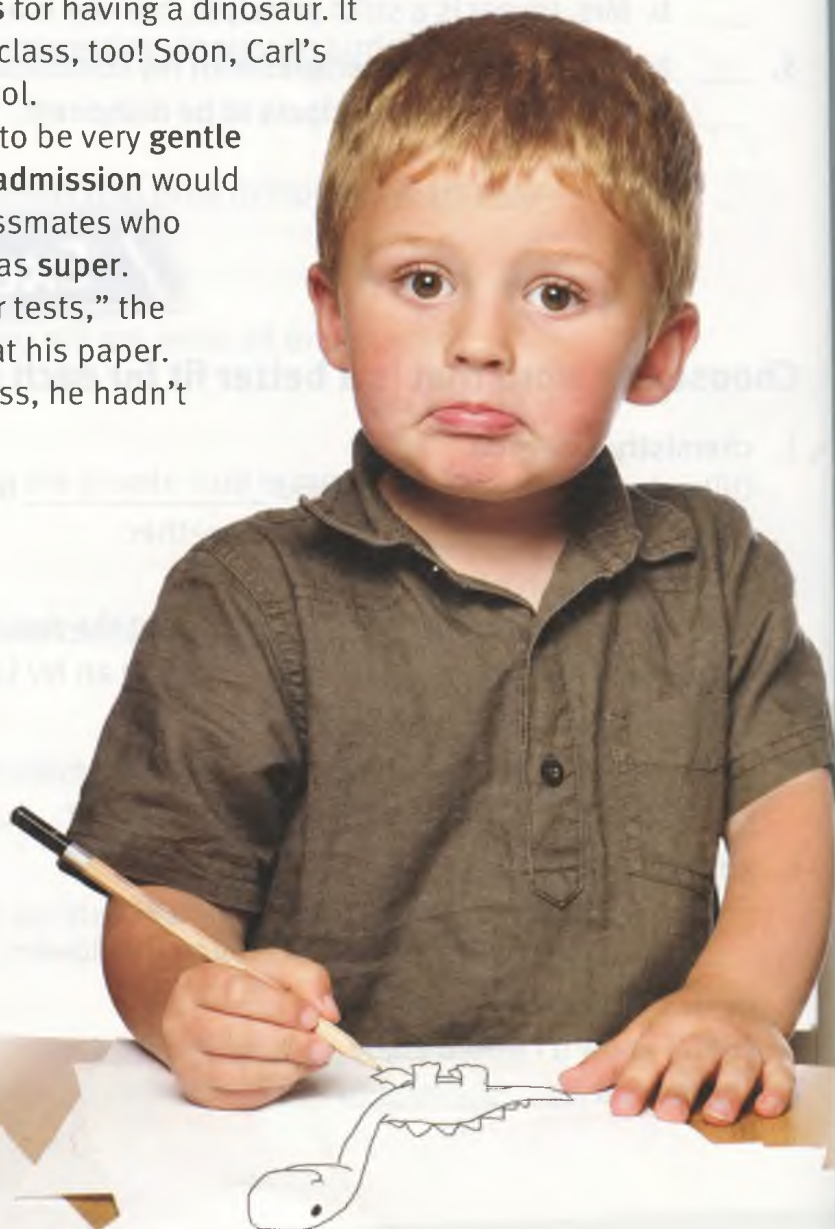
He walked to class. He put his umbrella on the **shelf** and sat in the third **row**. But the teacher asked why Carl's umbrella was on the floor. He told her not to **blame** him. But she sent him to the **principal** out of **spite**.

Next, he took a **geography** test. **Despite** studying, Carl didn't know the answers. He started drawing **lightly** on his paper.

Carl drew a huge **dinosaur**. What if it were real? He saw it in his mind. Carl's class said he was a **genius** for having a dinosaur. It could **interfere** with math class, too! Soon, Carl's **fame** spread through school.

He taught his dinosaur to be very **gentle** and put it on **exhibit**. But **admission** would only be given to those classmates who paid him a fee. His idea was **super**.

"It's time to turn in your tests," the teacher said. Carl looked at his paper. As he was dreaming in class, he hadn't finished the test!



نقاشی‌های دایناسور

این بدترین صبح تا به امروز بود. وقتی کارل از خواب بیدار شد، متوجه شد که او تکالیف نجوم و شیمی‌اش را انجام نداده است. همچنین، پیش بینی آب و هوا اعلام بارندگی کرد و این امر تمرین بیس بال را تحت تأثیر قرار می‌داد. ناگهان، مادرش فریاد زد: "همین حالا زباله‌ها را بیرون ببر! زمانی که کارل زباله را به بیرون برد و برگشت، کاملاً خیس بود." او گفت: "چه روز وحشتناکی است."

کارل پیاده به کلاس رفت. او چترش را روی قفسه گذاشت و در ردیف سوم نشست. اما معلم پرسید که چرا چتر کارل روی کف زمین است. او به معلمش گفت که او را سرزنش نکند. اما معلم از سر لجبازی او را پیش مدیر مدرسه فرستاد.

سپس، او آزمون جغرافیا داد. کارل با اینکه مطالعه کرده بود، جواب‌ها را نمی‌دانست. او با خونسردی شروع به نقاشی کشیدن روی ورقه‌اش کرد.

کارل یک دایناسور بزرگ کشید. اگر واقعی بود چه اتفاقی می‌افتاد؟ او دایناسور را در ذهن خود تصور کرد. هم کلاسی‌های کارل می‌گفتند که او یک نابغه است برای اینکه او یک دایناسور دارد. همچنین دایناسور می‌توانست مانع کلاس ریاضی شود! به سرعت، شهرت کارل در مدرسه پخش شد.

او به دایناسور خود آموخت که بسیار مهربان باشد و آن را در معرض نمایش قرار داد. اما اجازه‌ی ورود فقط به آن دسته از همکلاسی‌ها داده می‌شد که مبلغی را به وی پرداخت کنند. ایده‌ی او فوق العاده بود.

معلم گفت: "وقت آن رسیده است که آزمون‌های خود را برگردانید." کارل به برگه‌اش نگاه کرد. به دلیل اینکه او در کلاس رویاپردازی می‌کرد، امتحان را به پایان نرسانده بود!

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A wet classroom
 - b. A boy who is a genius
 - c. A bell that keeps ringing
 - d. A day that was not super

2. What does Carl think his dinosaur can do?
 - a. Make money for him on admission fees
 - b. Interfere with taking out the garbage
 - c. Take the blame for failing geography
 - d. Reach things on the top shelf

3. What did Carl do?
 - a. Break a jar at breakfast
 - b. Draw lightly on his test paper
 - c. Forget his hat on the bus
 - d. Stay after school for being late

4. Despite Carl studying for his test, what happened?
 - a. His teacher was not gentle with him.
 - b. He had to sit in the last row.
 - c. The exhibit did not earn him any fame.
 - d. He did not do well on his geography test.

5. Do you think that Carl will have baseball practice after school? Why?



لیست کلمات درس 12

- abuse (v.)
- afford (v.)
- bake (v.)
- bean (n.)
- candle (n.)
- convert (v.)
- debt (n.)
- decrease (v.)
- fault (n.)
- fund (n.)
- generous (adj.)
- ingredient (n.)
- insist (v.)
- mess (n.)
- metal (n.)
- monitor (v.)
- oppose (v.)
- passive (adj.)
- quantity (n.)
- sue (v.)

v.

abuse

[ə'bjʊ:s]

بدرفتاری کردن



- ❖ To abuse someone or something means to hurt them on purpose.
- The mean man abused his dog when it barked too loudly.
- مرد خبیث با سگش زمانی که با صدای بلند واق واق می‌کرد بدرفتاری کرد.

v.

afford

[ə'fɔ:rd]

استطاعت داشتن



- ❖ To afford something means you have enough money to pay for it.
- I've been saving my money, so I can afford to buy a new bike.
- من پول خود را پس انداز کرده‌ام بنابراین استطاعت خرید یک دوچرخه جدید را دارم.

v.

bake

[beɪk]

پختن



- ❖ To bake means to cook food with heat.
- My sister is a good cook. She bakes delicious cakes.
- خواهرم آشپز خوبی است. او کیک‌های خوشمزه می‌پزد.

n.

bean

[bi:n]

لوبیا، حبوبات



- ❖ A bean is a plant seed that is good to eat.
- There are many different kinds of beans to eat.
- انواع مختلفی از لوبیاها برای خوردن وجود دارد.

n.

candle

['kændl]

شمع



- ❖ A candle is a stick of wax that is lit on fire for light or heat.
- When the lights went out, we lit some candles.

➤ هنگامی که برق رفت ما تعدادی شمع روشن کردیم.

v.

convert

[kən'veɜ:t]

تبدیل کردن



- ❖ To convert something means to change it into something else.
- The man converted his messy field into a garden of flowers.

➤ آن مرد زمین نابسامان خود را به باغی از گل تبدیل کرد.

n.

debt

[det]

بدهی



- ❖ A debt is an amount of money that a person owes.
- I have not paid my gas bill. I owe a debt to the gas company.

➤ من صورتحساب گاز خود را پرداخت نکردم. من به شرکت گاز بدهی دارم.

v.

decrease

[di'kri:s]

کاهش دادن



- ❖ To decrease something is to make it less than it was before.
- Hiring more police officers has decreased crime in the city.

➤ استخدام کردن افسران پلیس بیشتر، جرم و جنایت را کاهش داد.



n.

fault

[fɔ:lt]

تقصیر، گناه

- ❖ A fault is a mistake.
- It is my fault that the cat ran away. I left the door open.
- تقصیر من است که گربه فرار کرد. من در را باز گذاشتم.



n.

fund

[fʌnd]

سرمایه، اندوخته، صندوق

- ❖ A fund is an amount of money that people have.
- We all put money into our club's fund.
- همه ما در صندوق باشگاهمان پول می‌گذاریم.



adj.

generous

['dʒenərəs]

سخاوتمند

- ❖ When someone is generous, they like to give things to people.
- The generous man donated several new computers to our school.
- مرد سخاوتمند چندین کامپیوتر جدید به مدرسه ما اهدا کرد.



n.

ingredient

[in'grɪ:diənt]

ترکیب، اجزا

- ❖ An ingredient is something that is part of a food dish.
- The main ingredients in cake are eggs, sugar and flour.
- ترکیبات اصلی در کیک تخم مرغ، شکر و آرد هستند.



v.

insist

[in'sɪst]

اصرار کردن

❖ To insist means to be firm in telling people what to do.

➤ I insist that you try some of these cookies.

➤ من اصرار دارم که مقداری از این شیرینی‌ها را امتحان کنید.



n.

mess

[mes]

بهم ریختگی

❖ A mess is a condition that is not clean or neat.

➤ Heather's room was a complete mess.

➤ اتاق هیتز کاملاً بهم ریخته بود.



n.

metal

['metl]

فلز

❖ metal is a strong material people use to build things.

➤ Steel is a common metal that is used to build buildings.

➤ فولاد یک فلز متداول است که در ساختن ساختمان‌ها استفاده می‌شود.



v.

monitor

['mɑ:nɪtər]

کنترل کردن، زیر نظر داشتن

❖ To monitor people or things is to watch them closely.

➤ The teacher monitors the students when they take tests.

➤ معلم دانش آموزان را زمانی که امتحان می‌دهند کنترل می‌کند.





v.

oppose

[ə'pəʊz]

مخالفت کردن



❖ To oppose something means to dislike it or act against it.

➤ I want to be a police officer because I oppose crime.

➤ من می‌خواهم یک افسر پلیس شوم زیرا با جرم و جنایت مخالف هستم.

adj.

passive

['pæsiʋ]

بی اراده، غیر فعال



❖ If a person is passive, they do not take action to solve problems.

➤ Marcie is so passive that she never solves her own problems.

➤ مارسِی آنقدر بی اراده است که هرگز مشکلات خودش را حل نمی‌کند.

n.

quantity

['kwɑ:ntəti]

مقدار، کمیت



❖ A quantity is a certain amount of something.

➤ I have a small quantity of milk in my glass.

➤ من در لیوانم مقدار کمی شیر دارم.

v.

sue

[su:]

شکایت کردن



❖ To sue someone is to take them to court for something wrong they did.

➤ I sued the company after I slipped on a banana peel in their hallway.

➤ من از این شرکت پس از اینکه در راهروی آنها بر روی یک پوست موز لیز خوردم شکایت کردم.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a certain amount
a. ingredient b. quantity c. metal d. fault
- to make less
a. decrease b. oppose c. insist d. abuse
- to watch closely
a. bake b. monitor c. mess d. afford
- a plant seed
a. sue b. passive c. bean d. fund
- money you owe
a. convert b. debt c. candle d. generous

Part B Circle two words that are related in each group.

- a. debt b. fund c. bean d. abuse
- a. fault b. abuse c. monitor d. sue
- a. afford b. bake c. insist d. ingredient
- a. fault b. decrease c. quantity d. convert
- a. debt b. monitor c. afford d. generous

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. To make sure the door was built strong, _____.
 a. it was made out of metal b. it was monitored to the floor
2. I was treated unfairly by my company, so _____.
 a. we decreased the table b. I decided to sue them in court
3. I went to the grocery store. _____.
 a. I converted the milk b. I got a small quantity of eggs
4. When your friend borrows money from you, _____.
 a. he owes you a debt b. he opposes you
5. The man wants to cook noodles. _____.
 a. He will get the ingredients b. He will insist the water
6. I have enough money. _____.
 a. My fund is too small b. I can afford to buy the shirt
7. When the oven was hot enough, _____.
 a. it baked the potato b. it made a mess in the kitchen
8. In case the power goes out, _____.
 a. you should keep candles at home
 b. you will be generous
9. When the girl became hungry, _____.
 a. she became passive and decided to do something about it
 b. she cooked some beans
10. My homework was not turned in. _____.
 a. I abused it at home b. It was all my fault

The Mean Chef

Once there was a chef, who was mean to his cooks. He was mean to the people who came in to eat. He charged too much for meals. Many people were not able to **afford** the cheapest **bean** dish. When his **metal** oven broke, he did not have it fixed. So everything **baked** in it burned. The only light was from **candles**, and the whole place was a **mess**. Sometimes, he didn't pay his waiters. Since they had no **funds**, they had many **debts**.

The chef behaved this way all the time. He **monitored** the cooks and yelled if they did not do things his way.

One day, the cooks decided that they were tired of the **abuse** and that they would not be **passive** anymore. Everyone **opposed** the chef. At first, they thought about **suing** him. Instead, they tied up the chef with rope. Now, they controlled the restaurant! They **decreased** the price of food. They used the best **ingredients** and made large **quantities** of food. They turned on the lights. The restaurant was **converted** into a happy place. For the first time, many people came to eat.

The chef realized that the restaurant's problems were his **fault**. The chef learned an important lesson. The new, **generous** chef **insisted** on giving the customers a free meal.



سرآشپز بدجنس

روزگاری سرآشپزی وجود داشت که با آشپزهای خود بدجنس بود. او با افرادی که برای میل کردن غذا می‌آمدند بدجنس بود. او غذاها را بسیار زیاد حساب می‌کرد. بسیاری از مردم پول ارزان‌ترین غذای لوبیا را نداشتند. زمانی که فر فلزی اش شکست آن را تعمیر نکرد. بنابراین تمام چیزهایی که در آن پخته می‌شد می‌سوخت. تنها نور (آنجا) از شمع بود و تمام فضا به هم ریخته بود. گاهی اوقات، حقوق پیشخدمت‌هایش را پرداخت نمی‌کرد. از آنجایی که هیچ پولی نداشتند بدهی زیادی داشتند.

سرآشپز همیشه همینطور رفتار می‌کرد. او آشپزها را کنترل می‌کرد و اگر به سبک او کارها را انجام نمی‌دادند بر سرشان فریاد می‌زد.

یک روز آشپزها تصمیم گرفتند که از بد رفتاری خسته شده‌اند و اینکه آنها دیگر نمی‌خواهند منفعل باشند. همه با سرآشپز مخالفت کردند. در ابتدا، به شکایت کردن از او فکر کردند. در عوض، آنها سرآشپز را با طناب بستند. اکنون، آنها رستوران را اداره می‌کردند! آنها قیمت غذاها را کاهش دادند. آنها از بهترین مواد غذایی استفاده کردند و مقدار هنگفتی غذا درست کردند. آنها چراغ‌ها را روشن کردند. رستوران به مکانی شاد تبدیل شد. برای اولین بار، بسیاری مردم برای میل کردن غذا آمدند.

سرآشپز متوجه شد که مشکلات رستوران تقصیر خودش بود. سرآشپز درس مهمی فراگرفت. سرآشپز جدید و سخاوتمند به دادن وعده‌ی غذایی رایگان به مشتری‌ها اصرار داشت.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a mean chef was converted into a generous man
 - b. Why metal ovens bake food until it burns
 - c. Why waiters' funds are not enough to pay their debts
 - d. How simple beans brought a large quantity of customers
2. Why could people not afford to eat at the restaurant?
 - a. The chef insisted they take free food.
 - b. The chef made prices too high.
 - c. The chef monitored the cooks.
 - d. The chef got tied up.
3. What did the chef learn at the end of the story?
 - a. Electricity was better than using candles.
 - b. It was his fault that the restaurant did so well.
 - c. The waiters and cooks took over his restaurant.
 - d. Behaving in a nice way is better than being mean.
4. According to the passage, all the following are true of the waiters and cooks EXCEPT _____.
 - a. they decreased prices
 - b. they used good ingredients
 - c. they were replaced by robots
 - d. they opposed the abuse of the chef
5. Why did the chef insist on giving his customers a free meal at the end of the story?



لیست کلمات درس 13

- anxiety (n.)
- army (n.)
- billion (n.)
- carve (v.)
- consult (v.)
- emergency (n.)
- fortune (n.)
- guarantee (v.)
- hike (v.)
- initial (adj.)
- intense (adj.)
- lend (v.)
- peak (n.)
- potential (adj.)
- pride (n.)
- proof (n.)
- quit (v.)
- spin (v.)
- tiny (adj.)
- tutor (n.)

n.

anxiety

[æŋ'zaiəti]

اضطراب، تشویش



- ❖ When someone has anxiety, they have a lot of worries and fear.
- When I have to climb to high places, I'm filled with anxiety.
- زمانی که مجبور می‌شوم از مکان‌های مرتفع بالا بروم پر از اضطراب می‌شوم.

n.

army

['ɑ:mi]

ارتش



- ❖ An army is a large group of people who fight in wars.
- The army protects all the people in the country.
- ارتش از همه‌ی مردم داخل کشور محافظت می‌کند.

n.

billion

['bɪljən]

میلیارد



- ❖ A billion is a very large number: 1,000,000,000.
- There are billions of stars in outer space.
- میلیاردها ستاره در فضای بیرونی وجود دارد.

v.

carve

[kɑ:rv]

بریدن (با کارد)، قطعه قطعه کردن



- ❖ To carve means to cut into something.
- My father usually carves the turkey for Thanksgiving.
- پدرم معمولاً برای شکرگزاری بوقلمون می‌برد. (تکه تکه می‌کند)

v.

consult

[kən'sʌlt]

مشورت کردن

- ❖ To consult someone means to ask them for help.
- I will consult my accountant to find a way to pay for my bills.
- برای پیدا کردن راهی برای پرداخت صورتحساب هایم با حسابدار خود مشورت خواهم کرد.

n.

emergency

[i'mɜːrdʒənsi]

وضع اضطراری

- ❖ An emergency is a time when someone needs help right away.
- There is a huge fire in my house! This is an emergency!
- در خانه ام آتش بسیار بزرگی وجود دارد. این یک وضعیت اضطراری است!

n.

fortune

['fɔːrtʃən]

شانس، بخت و اقبال

- ❖ When someone has good fortune, it means they have luck.
- I have good fortune when I play cards.
- من شانس خوبی دارم زمانی که کارت بازی می کنم.

v.

guarantee

[,gærən'tiː]

ضمانت کردن، متعهد شدن، اطمینان دادن

- ❖ To guarantee means to know something will happen.
- I guarantee that the sun will come up in the morning.
- من اطمینان می دهم که صبح خورشید طلوع خواهد کرد.

v.

hike

[haɪk]

پیاده روی کردن



- ❖ To hike means to walk in the mountains or forest.
- I always bring plenty of equipment with me when I hike.
- من همیشه هنگام پیاده روی تجهیزات زیادی با خودم می‌آورم.

adj.

initial

[ɪˈnɪʃl]

اولیه، اول، نخستین



- ❖ When something is initial, it is the first thing.
- The initial step when writing a paper is to find a good topic.
- قدم اول هنگام نوشتن یک مقاله، پیدا کردن موضوع خوب است.

adj.

intense

[ɪnˈtens]

شدید، زیاد، غلیظ



- ❖ If something is intense, it is very strong.
- The skunk made an intense odor that filled the air.
- راسوی متعفن آمریکایی بوی شدید (غلیظی) ایجاد کرد که هوا را پر کرد.

v.

lend

[lend]

قرض دادن



- ❖ To lend something is to give it to someone for a short time.
- My sister lost her pen, so I will lend her mine.
- خواهرم خودکارش را گم کرد، بنابراین من مال خودم را به او قرض می‌دهم.



n.

peak

[pi:k]

قله

- ❖ The peak is the very top of a mountain.
- There is snow on the peaks of those mountains.
- روی قله‌ی آن کوه‌ها برف وجود دارد.



adj.

potential

[pə'tenʃl]

بالقوه، احتمالی

- ❖ potential means capable of being but not yet in existence.
- I've thought of some potential problems with your idea.
- به برخی از مشکلات بالقوه درباره نظرت فکر کرده‌ام.



n.

pride

[praɪd]

افتخار، غرور

- ❖ When you have pride, you are happy with yourself.
- I take pride in getting good grades.
- من از گرفتن نمره‌های خوب افتخار می‌کنم.



n.

proof

[pru:f]

مدرک

- ❖ proof is a fact that shows something is real.
- They used his fingerprint as proof for the crime he committed.
- آنها از اثر انگشت او به عنوان مدرک برای جنایتی که مرتکب شده بود استفاده کردند.

v.

quit

[kwɪt]

ترک کردن، رها کردن، دست کشیدن

- ❖ To quit something means to stop doing it.
- I quit running because I got tired.

➤ من از دویدن دست کشیدم زیرا خسته شده بودم.

v.

spin

[spɪn]

چرخیدن

- ❖ To spin is to turn around in circles.
- The boy kept spinning until he fell down.

➤ پسر همچنان می‌چرخید تا اینکه پایین افتاد.

adj.

tiny

['taɪni]

ریز، کوچک

- ❖ When people or things are tiny, they are very small.
- A baby's hand is tiny.

➤ دست یک نوزاد خیلی کوچک است.

n.

tutor

['tu:tər]

معلم خصوصی

- ❖ A tutor is someone who gives lessons in a certain subject.
- My sister is bad at math. So my mother hired a tutor to help her.

➤ خواهرم در ریاضی ضعیف است. بنابراین مادرم یک معلم خصوصی استخدام کرد تا به او کمک کند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. carve
a. to know
b. to stop
c. to teach
d. to cut into
2. consult
a. to stop
b. to ask for help
c. to give
d. to turn in circles
3. anxiety
a. very small
b. luck
c. worries
d. group of fighters
4. intense
a. strong
b. first
c. bad
d. mountain top
5. proof
a. luck
b. facts
c. a large number
d. a group of fighters
6. tutor
a. a group of fighters
b. someone who gives lessons
c. to turn in circles
d. to stop
7. lend
a. to stop
b. to know
c. to give
d. to cut
8. initial
a. first
b. mountain top
c. very small
d. strong
9. hike
a. to walk in the forest
b. to teach
c. to turn in circles
d. to ask for help
10. pride
a. a group of fighters
b. able to happen
c. needing help
d. being happy with yourself

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

- ___ a. I should **quit** eating candy because it is bad for me.

___ b. The **tiny** tower stretched to the sky.
- ___ a. We ran far above the mountain **peak**.

___ b. I will need water if I'm going to **hike** the long trail.
- ___ a. If I want to get better at sports, I should **quit** playing.

___ b. The **tiny** ant crawled in under the door.
- ___ a. The clouds look like they can touch the mountain **peaks**.

___ b. I have a great deal of **pride** when I lose a contest.
- ___ a. The boy was filled with **pride** when he learned how to read.

___ b. I **hiked** downstairs from my room.

Exercise 3

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. guarantee / potential

There are _____ problems with her plan.

I _____ you that I'll get a good grade because I studied hard.

2. lends / tutor

My mother _____ me her car when I need it.

I work as a _____ during the summer to make money.

3. billions / intense

My eyes hurt when I looked into the _____ light.

There are _____ of people in the world.

4. quit / initial

To cook noodles, the _____ step is to boil water.

She _____ taking care of her plants, so they died.

5. emergency / anxiety

I had a feeling of _____ when I thought the bully would hit me.

When the man stopped breathing, his wife knew it was an _____.

The Cat and the Fox

One day, a cat **hiked** on a mountain. When he reached the **peak**, he met a fox. They began talking about how they **get** away from their enemies.

“I am very smart. I have **billions** of ideas. I can **carve** a **tiny** hole in a tree, and then climb in,” the fox said. He added, “I have a lot of friends. If I am in trouble, I can call them to **lend** their help. I can escape an entire **army** if I have to!”

Then, the fox asked, “What are your **potential** plans?” The cat said, “I have only one plan.” The fox said, “I hope you have good **fortune**, then! Do you want me to be your **tutor**? I can teach you many things.” The cat said, “I **guarantee** that my plan works every time. We can **quit** talking about it.”

Soon, they saw a group of wolves. It was an **emergency**. The cat quickly used her plan. She ran up a tree. The fox could not decide which plan to use. “What should my **initial** move be? Should I **consult** my friends?” The fox felt **intense anxiety**. All he could do was **spin** in a circle. The wolves caught the fox. The cat was full of **pride**. This is **proof** that having a good plan is better than having many bad plans.



گره و روباه

روزی، یک گره روی کوهی پیاده روی می‌کرد. وقتی به قله رسید، روباهی را دید. آن‌ها شروع به صحبت در مورد این که چطور از دشمنانشان گریختند کردند.

روباه گفت: "من خیلی باهوش هستم. من میلیاردها ایده دارم. من می‌توانم یک سوراخ کوچک در یک درخت بکنم و بعد از آن بالا بروم." وی افزود، "من دوستان زیادی دارم. اگر به درد سر بیفتم، می‌توانم آنها را برای کمک گرفتن صدا بزنم. اگر مجبور باشم می‌توانم از کل یک ارتش فرار کنم!"

سپس روباه پرسید: "پس نقشه‌های بالقوه تو چه هستند؟" گره گفت: "من فقط یک نقشه دارم." روباه گفت، "پس امیدوارم شانس خوبی داشته باشی! آیا می‌خواهی که من معلم خصوصی شما باشم؟ من می‌توانم چیزهای زیادی را به تو بیاموزم. گره گفت: "من اطمینان می‌دهم که نقشه‌ام همیشه کار می‌کند. ما می‌توانیم از صحبت کردن در این باره دست بکشیم."

طولی نکشید که آنها گروهی از گرگ‌ها را دیدند. این یک وضعیت اضطراری بود. گره به سرعت از نقشه‌اش استفاده کرد. او به بالای درختی دوید. روباه نتوانست تصمیم بگیرد از کدام نقشه استفاده کند. باید اقدام اولیه من چه باشد؟ آیا باید با دوستانم مشورت کنم؟ روباه احساس اضطراب شدیدی کرد. تنها کاری که می‌توانست بکند این بود که در یک دایره بچرخد. گرگ‌ها روباه را گرفتند. گره پر از غرور بود. این اثباتی است مبنی بر این که داشتن یه نقشه خوب بهتر از داشتن تعداد زیادی نقشه‌ی بد است.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why cats have good fortune
 - b. How you make guarantees about plans
 - c. Why you need a good plan in an emergency
 - d. How foxes have the potential to make billions of plans
2. Why did the fox feel intense anxiety?
 - a. Because he tried to spin in circles
 - b. Because his army of friends did not lend their help
 - c. Because he did not know what his initial move should be
 - d. Because he could not find a tree in which to carve a tiny hole
3. Why was the cat full of pride at the end of the story?
 - a. He hiked to the peak of the mountain.
 - b. He had proof that his plan was best.
 - c. He did not let the fox become his tutor.
 - d. He loved to hide in the trees.
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the fox got caught by the wolves
 - b. the cat did not get caught by the wolves
 - c. the fox said he could consult his friends if he got into trouble
 - d. the fox decided to quit thinking of plans and just use one
5. What guarantee did the cat make to the fox?



لیست کلمات درس 14

- apparent (adj.)
- blind (adj.)
- calculate (v.)
- chat (v.)
- commit (v.)
- compose (v.)
- dormitory (n.)
- exhaust (v.)
- greenhouse (n.)
- ignore (v.)
- obvious (adj.)
- physics (n.)
- portion (n.)
- remind (v.)
- secretary (n.)
- severe (adj.)
- talent (n.)
- thesis (n.)
- uniform (n.)
- vision (n.)



adj.

apparent

[ə'pærənt]

آشکار

- ❖ If something is apparent, it is easy to see.
- Her happiness was apparent from the smile on her face.
- خوشحالی او از لبخندی که روی صورتش داشت آشکار بود.



adj.

blind

[blaɪnd]

نابینا

- ❖ When people are blind, they cannot see.
- The blind man didn't see the hole and almost fell in.
- مرد نابینا حفره را ندید و تقریباً به داخل آن افتاد.

v.

calculate

['kælkjuleɪt]

محاسبه کردن، حساب کردن



- ❖ To calculate is to find an answer using math.
- I calculated how much money I would need to buy the car.
- من حساب کردم که برای خرید آن ماشین چقدر پول نیاز دارم.

v.

chat

[tʃæt]

گپ زدن



- ❖ To chat is to talk with someone.
- Even though they were far apart, the couple chatted every day.
- زن و شوهر هر روز با هم گپ می‌زدند هر چند آنها از هم دور بودند.

v.

commit

[kə'mɪt]

متعهد به کاری شدن، تعهد دادن



- ❖ To commit to something is to promise to do it.
- Seth wanted to go home, but he had committed to finishing the job.
- ست میخواست به خانه برود، اما او متعهد شده بود که کار را تمام کند.

v.

compose

[kəm'pəʊz]

تنظیم کردن، درست کردن، ساختن



- ❖ To compose something is to make it from smaller parts.
- Tonya composed her report using many sources of information.
- تونیا گزارش خود را با استفاده از بسیاری از منابع اطلاعاتی تنظیم کرد.

n.

dormitory

['dɔ:rmətɔ:ri]

خوابگاه



- ❖ A dormitory is a school building where students live.
- I will move into the dormitory at the beginning of the school year.
- من در آغاز سال تحصیلی مدرسه به خوابگاه نقل مکان خواهم کرد.

v.

exhaust

[ɪg'zɔ:st]

خسته کردن، نیروی چیزی را گرفتن



- ❖ To exhaust someone is to make them tired.
- John exhausted himself by swimming all day.
- جان با شنا کردن در تمام طول روز خود را خسته کرد.

n.

greenhouse ['gri:nhaʊs]

گلخانه



- ❖ A greenhouse is a small glass building that is used to grow plants.
- We have a small greenhouse in our backyard where we grow plants.
- ما یک گلخانه کوچک در حیاط خلوت خود داریم که در آنجا گیاهان خود را پرورش می‌دهیم.

v.

ignore [ɪg'no:ɪr]

نادیده گرفتن، رد کردن



- ❖ To ignore something is to act like you do not see or hear it.
- I ignored the message he was making and kept studying.
- پیامی که داشت می‌فرستاد را نادیده گرفتم و به مطالعه کردن ادامه دادم.

adj.

obvious ['ɑ:bviəs]

واضح، آشکار

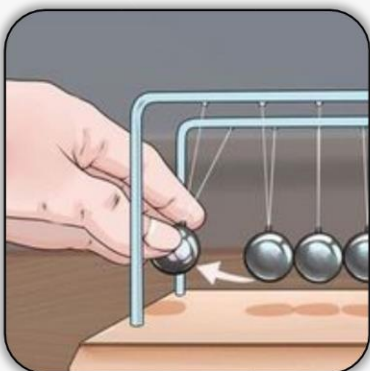


- ❖ If something is obvious, it is clear and easily seen.
- It was obvious that he was tired. He kept falling asleep.
- واضح بود که خسته است. او مدام به خواب می‌رفت.

n.

physics ['fɪzɪks]

فیزیک



- ❖ physics is a science that deals with energy and how it affects things.
- In physics class, we used Newton's Cradle to learn about energy.
- در کلاس فیزیک ما از قانون نیوتون برای یادگیری در مورد انرژی استفاده کردیم.

n.

portion

['pɔ:rn]

بخش، قسمت



- ❖ A portion of something is a part of it.
- I only ate a small portion of the pizza.

➤ من فقط بخش کوچکی از پیتزا را خوردم.

v.

remind

[ri'maɪnd]

به یاد آوردن، یاد آوری کردن



- ❖ To remind someone is to tell them to remember to do something.
- Nick's dad reminded him to do his homework.

➤ پدر نیک به او یادآوری کرد که تکالیفش را انجام دهد.

n.

secretary

['sekrəteri]

منشی



- ❖ A secretary is a person who works in an office.
- Rebecca asked her secretary to type a report.

➤ ربکا از منشی خود خواست که گزارشی را تایپ کند.

adj.

severe

[si'veɪr]

طاقت فرسا، شدید



- ❖ If something is severe, it is very bad or serious.
- After hitting his hand with the hammer, Sam was in severe pain.

➤ سام پس از آن که دستش با چکش آسیب دید درد طاقت فرسایی داشت.

n.

talent

['tælənt]

استعداد



- ❖ If someone has a talent, they are naturally able to do it well.
- Maria has a talent for playing the piano.

➤ ماریا در نواختن پیانو استعداد دارد.

n.

thesis

['θi:sis]

قضیه، فرضیه، پایان نامه



- ❖ A thesis is an idea that needs to be proved.
- She did not support her thesis very well.

➤ او خیلی خوب از پایان نامه خود حمایت نکرد.

n.

uniform

['ju:nifɔ:rm]

لباس فرم



- ❖ A uniform is a piece of clothing worn by people of the same group.
- All the members of our marching band wear matching uniforms.

➤ همه اعضای گروه رژه ما لباس فرم یکدست می‌پوشند.

n.

vision

['vɪʒn]

بینایی



- ❖ vision is the act of seeing.

- The eye doctor tested my vision.

➤ چشم پزشک بینایی من را سنجش کرد.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a part of something
 - greenhouse
 - secretary
 - thesis
 - portion
- easy to see
 - blind
 - talent
 - apparent
 - severe
- to make something
 - compose
 - commit
 - exhaust
 - ignore
- to find an answer
 - ignore
 - exhaust
 - calculate
 - remind
- a kind of science
 - physics
 - thesis
 - vision
 - uniform
- the act of seeing
 - dormitory
 - vision
 - physics
 - greenhouse
- unable to see
 - severe
 - apparent
 - obvious
 - blind
- a building used to grow plants
 - thesis
 - greenhouse
 - portion
 - talent
- a school building
 - secretary
 - talent
 - dormitory
 - uniform
- to talk
 - chat
 - compose
 - remind
 - calculate

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- Frank needs to buy a new piece of clothing that shows him as part of a group.
unif _____
- It is easily seen that Elizabeth hates math class.
obv _____
- My dad will tell me to remember to feed our dog.
rem _____ me
- Sitting out in the sun gave David a very serious burn.
se _____
- I walked back to the school building where students live before class.
d _____

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

secretary

commit

apparent

ignores

blind

- My sister always _____ me and acts like I'm not there.
- The _____ answers the office phone for her boss.
- Nikki's love of books is _____, because she is always reading.
- Jeff needed Rick to _____ to being there so that he knew he was coming.
- The _____ man needed help getting across the street.

The Good Student

Sue left her **dormitory** early that morning. She had even washed her **uniform** the night before. She wanted to look nice for the day.

Sue was **committed** to learning, and she had a **talent** for getting good grades. In fact, Sue didn't sleep much. She **composed** a paper and found the perfect **thesis** about the importance of **greenhouses**. She also studied for her **physics** test. Sue was already tired.

During the test, she **calculated** her answers. Soon, she felt sick. Her face got hot, and her **vision** began to blur. She was **blind** for a moment. The teacher saw Sue's **apparent** sickness. He wanted to send her to the nurse. But she wouldn't go. Sue still had a **portion** of the test to finish.

After that, Sue went to the nurse. After seeing the **secretary**, she waited. A few minutes later, the nurse came in with a glass of juice and told Sue they needed to **chat**. "It is **obvious** that you have **exhausted** yourself," the nurse said. "If you keep working so hard, it could have **severe** results."

"My parents tell me that all the time. I guess I shouldn't **ignore** them," Sue said.

"You have to **remind** yourself it is OK to rest," the nurse said.

When Sue got back to her room, she went right to bed. She made sure she got enough rest every night after that.



دانش آموز خوب

آن روز صبح سو خوابگاه را زود ترک کرد. او حتی لباس فرمش را شب قبل شسته بود. می‌خواست برای آن روز خوب به نظر برسد. سو متعهد به یادگیری شده بود و برای گرفتن نمره‌های خوب استعداد داشت. در واقع، سو زیاد نخواهید. او مقاله‌ای نوشت و رساله بی‌نظیری در مورد اهمیت گلخانه‌ها یافت. او همچنین برای امتحان فیزیک خود مطالعه کرد. سو پیش از این خسته بود.

در طول امتحان، جواب‌هایش را محاسبه کرد. طولی نکشید، احساس بیماری کرد. صورتش داغ شد و بیناییش شروع به تار شدن کرد. برای یک لحظه کور شد. معلم بیماری آشکار سو را دید. می‌خواست او را نزد پرستار بفرستد. اما او نمی‌خواست برود. سو هنوز قسمتی از آزمون را باید تمام می‌کرد.

بعد از آن، سو نزد پرستار رفت. بعد از دیدن منشی، منتظر ماند. چند دقیقه بعد، پرستار با یک لیوان آب میوه آمد و به سو گفت که نیاز دارند گپ بزنند. پرستار گفت: " واضح است که شما خود را خسته کرده اید. " اگر به چنین سخت کار کردن ادامه دهید، می‌تواند عواقب شدیدی داشته باشد. " سو گفت: " پدر و مادرم همیشه این را به من می‌گویند. من حدس می‌زنم که نباید آنها را نادیده بگیرم. "

پرستار گفت: " شما مجبورید به خودتان یادآوری کنید که خوب است که استراحت کنید. "

وقتی سو به اتاقش برگشت، فوراً به رختخواب رفت. او اطمینان حاصل کرد که از این به بعد هر شب به اندازه کافی استراحت کند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A nurse reminding a student about her history paper
 - b. How to calculate an answer
 - c. A girl's apparent talent for science
 - d. A girl who studies so much that she gets sick
2. According to the passage, why did Sue stay up late the night before?
 - a. She was washing her uniform.
 - b. She was ignoring her parents on purpose.
 - c. She was composing a thesis.
 - d. She was cleaning her dormitory.
3. What did the nurse bring into the room?
 - a. A glass of juice
 - b. The secretary
 - c. Sue's physics test
 - d. A vision chart
4. According to the passage, what was obvious to the nurse after seeing Sue?
 - a. Sue had committed herself to learning.
 - b. Sue had exhausted herself.
 - c. Sue had done only a portion of the test.
 - d. Sue had become blind.
5. As they chatted, what did the nurse say would cause Sue severe sickness?



لیست کلمات درس 15

- absorb (v.)
- boss (n.)
- committee (n.)
- contract (n.)
- crew (n.)
- devote (v.)
- dig (v.)
- dine (v.)
- donate (v.)
- double (adj.)
- elevate (v.)
- flavor (n.)
- foundation (n.)
- generation (n.)
- handle (n.)
- layer (n.)
- mud (n.)
- smooth (adj.)
- soil (n.)
- unique (adj.)

v.

absorb

[əb'sɔ:rb]

جذب کردن

- ❖ To absorb a liquid means to take it inside.
- He used a sponge to absorb the water on the floor.

➤ او از یک اسفنج برای جذب آب روی زمین استفاده کرد.

n.

boss

[bɔ:s]

رئیس

- ❖ A boss is a person in charge of other people at work.
- My boss is a nice person.

➤ رئیس من آدم خوبی است.

n.

committee

[kə'miti]

کمیته

- ❖ A committee is a group of people who meet together to make decisions.
- The school's committee agreed on a new dress code for students.

➤ کمیته مدرسه با آیین نامه جدید لباس برای دانش آموزان موافقت کرد.

n.

contract

['kɔ:ntrækt]

قرارداد

- ❖ A contract is a written agreement between two people.
- The woman signed a contract when she bought the house.

➤ آن خانم هنگام خرید خانه یک قرارداد امضا کرد.

n.

crew

[kru:]

خدمه، کارگران

❖ A crew is a group of workers.

➤ My father has a crew. They help him build houses.

➤ پدر من کارگر دارد. آنها به او در ساخت خانه کمک می‌کنند.



v.

devote

[di'vout]

اختصاص دادن

❖ To devote time to something means to spend a lot of time doing it.

➤ She devotes two hours a day to playing the piano.

➤ او روزانه دو ساعت را به نوازندگی پیانو اختصاص می‌دهد.



v.

dig

[dɪg]

حفر کردن

❖ To dig is to make a hole in the ground.

➤ My dog digs in the yard so he can hide his bones.

➤ سگ من (زمین) حیات را حفر می‌کند تا بتواند استخوان‌هایش را پنهان کند.



v.

dine

[daɪn]

شام خوردن

❖ To dine means to eat dinner.

➤ The young couple dined at their home.

➤ زوج جوان در خانه خود شام خوردند.



v.

donate

['daʊneɪt]

هدا کردن، بخشیدن

- ❖ To donate is to give something to a charity or organization.
- We donate money to Christmas charities every year.
- ما هر سال به خیریه‌های کریسمس پول اهدا می‌کنیم.



adj.

double

['dʌbl]

دوبرابر

- ❖ If something is double, it is twice as much, or twice as many.
- I paid almost double the amount for that shirt.
- من تقریباً دو برابر پول آن پیراهن را پرداخت کردم.



v.

elevate

['elɪveɪt]

بالا بردن

- ❖ To elevate something is to put it at a higher level.
- The man elevated the picture so he could see it better.
- مرد عکس را بالا برد تا بهتر بتواند آن را ببیند.



n.

flavor

['fleɪvə(r)ɪŋ]

طعم

- ❖ A flavor is the taste of food or drinks.
- The flavor of the ice cream was very good.



➤ طعم آن بستنی بسیار خوب بود.

n.

foundation [faʊn'deɪʃn]

موسسه، بنیاد



- ❖ A foundation is a group that provides money for research.
- The foundation raised money to give scholarships to students.
- بنیاد برای اعطای بورسیه تحصیلی به دانش آموزان/دانشجویان پول (بودجه) را افزایش داد.

n.

generation [ˌdʒenə'reɪʃn]

نسل



- ❖ A generation is a group of people who live at the same time.
- My grandparents are from a different generation than me.
- پدربزرگ و مادربزرگ من از نسلی متفاوت با نسل من هستند.

n.

handle ['hændl]

دسته



- ❖ A handle is the part of an object people hold while using it.
- The pot is very hot. So pick it up by the handle.
- قابلمه بسیار داغ است پس آن را با دسته بردارید.

n.

layer ['leɪ]

لایه



- ❖ A layer covers over something or is between two things.
- There was a layer of snow on the tops of the houses this morning.
- امروز صبح یک لایه برف در بالای خانه‌ها وجود داشت.

n.

mud

[mʌd]

گل و لای، گل، لجن



❖ mud is soft, wet dirt.

➤ My brother played rugby in the mud. Now he's dirty.

➤ برادرم در گل و لای راگبی بازی کرد. اکنون او کثیف است.

adj.

smooth

[smu:ð]

نرم



❖ If something is smooth, it has no bumps.

➤ The baby's skin felt very smooth.

➤ پوست نوزاد حس خیلی نرم و لطیفی داشت.

n.

soil

[sɔɪl]

خاک



❖ soil is the top layer of land on the Earth.

➤ The boy planted flowers in the soil and watered them every day.

➤ پسر گل‌ها را در خاک کاشت و آن‌ها را هر روز آبیاری کرد.

adj.

unique

[ju'ni:k]

منحصر به فرد، بی نظیر



❖ If people or things are unique, they are not like the others.

➤ Her dog is unique. I've never seen one quite like it.

➤ سگ او منحصر به فرد است. من هرگز سگی شبیه آن ندیده‌ام.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- someone who controls workers
a. absorb b. boss c. generation d. crew
- not like anything else
a. flavor b. foundation c. committee d. unique
- to make two of something
a. layer b. dig c. double d. devote
- to eat something
a. dine b. precise c. mud d. handle
- to put something higher
a. donate b. elevate c. soil d. contract

Part B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- foundation
a. special b. a group that provides money for research
c. the part held in the hand d. wet dirt
- generation
a. the same age group b. without bumps
c. to eat d. something used to cut
- committee
a. a group of workmen b. taste of food or drink
c. to put higher d. a group that makes decisions
- donate
a. to move dirt b. an agreement
c. to give something d. a single thickness
- boss
a. to give something b. someone who controls workers
c. to give everything d. dirt

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. The sponge _____.
 a. absorbed all the water b. contracted to save money
2. They will help. _____.
 a. They are the crew working on this job
 b. They aren't in the same generation
3. The food tastes better now _____.
 a. that you added more salt to give it some flavor
 b. that you added some soil to make it grow
4. She was very special. _____.
 a. She seldom spent time with the foundation
 b. She had a unique skill that few people have
5. Dr. Dion started a _____.
 a. boss at work b. foundation to help sick children
6. We were able to _____.
 a. devote no attention b. dig very deep into the soft soil
7. Where will you _____?
 a. dine at for dinner b. donate your table from
8. The rock was _____.
 a. missing its handle b. smooth and flat
9. You will get dirty _____.
 a. if you elevate your feet b. if you play in the mud
10. If you are cooking for more than two people, _____.
 a. layer it with some milk
 b. double the amount of water in the recipe

The Lucky Knife

I've devoted my life to studying past **generations**. Last year, I had a **unique** chance to work with my uncle. Our job was to find old treasures for a school's history **foundation**. He also hired a **crew** of students. They signed a **contract** to work with him. He was the **boss**. The place was strange, though. I **dined** on many things that I had never tasted before. They had an unusual **flavor**.

We had been there about a month and hadn't found anything. One day, I began to **dig** in the **soil**. The ground's **layers** got wetter. Soon I was digging in the **mud**. My shovel began to get very heavy. It felt like it had **doubled** in weight because the ground had **absorbed** a lot of water.

Finally, I saw something in the mud. It was an old knife! The **handle** felt **smooth** in my hand. I **elevated** it so I could see it better. There was writing on it.

"It says it will bring good luck," my uncle said with a smile. "Why don't you keep it?"

I put it in my tent. The next day, we found many more things. There were pots, jewelry and weapons. My uncle **donated** all of the things to a special **committee**. Many newspapers wrote stories about it. It seemed the knife really did bring good luck!



چاقوی خوش یمن

من تمام عمرم را صرف مطالعه‌ی نسل‌های گذشته کرده‌ام. پارسال، یک فرصت منحصر به فرد برای کار با عمویم داشتم. کار ما پیدا کردن گنجینه‌های قدیمی برای بنیاد تاریخ مدرسه بود. او همچنین گروهی از دانش آموزان را استخدام کرد. آنها قراردادی را برای کار با او امضا کردند. او رئیس بود. به هر حال، آن مکان خیلی عجیب بود. من چیزهای زیادی را که هرگز قبلاً نچشیده بودم خوردم. آنها مزه‌ای غیر معمول داشتند.

تقریباً یک ماه بود که آنجا بودیم و چیزی پیدا نکرده بودیم. یک روز، من شروع به کندن زمین کردم. لایه‌های زمین خیس‌تر می‌شدند. طولی نکشید که در گل و لای در حال حفر کردن بودم. بیل من شروع به بسی سنگین شدن کرد. به نظر می‌رسید که وزنش دو برابر شده بود زیرا زمین مقدار زیادی آب جذب کرده بود.

بلاخره، چیزی در گل و لای دیدم. یک چاقوی قدیمی بود! دسته در دستم صیغلی بنظر می‌رسید. آن را بالا بردم تا بتوانم بهتر بینمش. نوشته‌ای روی آن بود. عمویم با لبخند گفت: "می‌گویند که خوش شانسی می‌آورد." "چرا آن را نگه نمی‌داری؟"

آن را در چادرم گذاشتم. روز بعد، ما چیزهای بیشتری پیدا کردیم. در آنجا دیگ‌ها، جواهرات و سلاح‌هایی وجود داشت. عموی من همه‌ی چیزها را به یک کمینته‌ی ویژه اهدا کرد. بسیاری از روزنامه‌ها راجع به آن گزارشاتی نوشتند. به نظر می‌رسید چاقو واقعا خوش شانسی آورده بود!

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How someone found an old knife
 - b. A generation of college students
 - c. A crew of committee workers digging in the mud
 - d. How a smooth knife handle feels

2. All of the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the college students signed a contract
 - b. the author's uncle worked for a foundation
 - c. the items found at the site were donated
 - d. the teen worked double the amount of everyone else

3. What is probably true of the teen in the story?
 - a. He could not read the writing on the knife.
 - b. He held a higher position than the other students.
 - c. He had to elevate the knife to see what it was.
 - d. He didn't want to devote his time to history

4. Where did the teen find the knife?
 - a. On top of the soil
 - b. Under layers of dirt
 - c. In the museum
 - d. In his boss's tent

5. Why did the dirt become heavier?



لیست کلمات درس 16

- chamber (n.)
- deny (v.)
- document (n.)
- emphasize (v.)
- fever (n.)
- flu (n.)
- freeze (v.)
- gesture (n.)
- interrupt (v.)
- last (v.)
- likeness (n.)
- moreover (adv.)
- perspective (n.)
- rational (adj.)
- recover (v.)
- rely (v.)
- shock (v.)
- shy (adj.)
- stare (v.)
- thus (adv.)

n.

chamber

['tʃeɪmbər]

اتاق خواب



- ❖ A chamber is an old word for a bedroom.
- The girl was tired. She went to her chamber for a nap.
- دختر خسته بود. او برای چرت زدن به اتاق خواب خود رفت.

v.

deny

[di'naɪ]

انکار کردن



- ❖ To deny something is to say it is not true.
- The boy denied that he broke the window.
- پسر انکار کرد که پنجره را شکسته بود.

n.

document

['dɑ:kjʊmənt]

سند



- ❖ A document is an official piece of writing.
- He was given an official document proving he was a citizen.
- سندی رسمی به او داده شد که ثابت می‌کرد که او یک شهروند بود.

v.

emphasize

['emfəsaɪz]

تاکید کردن



- ❖ To emphasize is to give importance or attention to something.
- She emphasized the key points by circling them in red ink.
- او با خط کشیدن دور آنها با جوهر قرمز بر روی نکات کلیدی تاکید کرد.

n.

fever

['fi:vər]

تب



❖ A fever is a high body temperature that people get when they are sick.

➤ Lydia had a high fever so she didn't go to school.

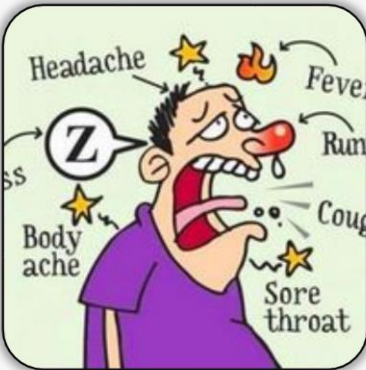
➤ لیدا تب بالایی داشت. بنابراین به مدرسه نرفت.

n.

flu

[flu:]

آنفولانزا



❖ The flu is a type of sickness that makes you feel weak or your body hurt.

➤ Since he had the flu, he felt miserable.

➤ از آنجایی که او آنفولانزا داشت، احساس بدبختی و درماندگی می‌کرد.

v.

freeze

[fri:z]

یخ زدن



❖ To freeze is to become very cold.

➤ If you don't wear your coat in winter, you will freeze.

➤ اگر در زمستان کت خود را نپوشید، یخ خواهید زد.

n.

gesture

['dʒestʃər]

ژست، حرکت



❖ A gesture is a movement of the hands or body.

➤ My teacher makes a lot of gestures when she speaks.

➤ معلم هنگامی که صحبت می‌کند حرکات زیادی انجام می‌دهد.

v.

interrupt

[ˌɪntəˈrʌpt]

مزاحم شدن، توی حرف کسی پریدن



- ❖ To interrupt is to briefly stop someone when they are doing something.
- My mother interrupted me when I was trying to listen to music.
- هنگامی که سعی می‌کردم به موزیک گوش دهم، مادرم مزاحم شد.

v.

last

[læst]

طول کشیدن



- ❖ To last is to continue or go on for an amount of time.
- The football match lasted for nearly two hours.
- مسابقه فوتبال حدوداً دو ساعت طول کشید.

n.

likeness

['laɪknəs]

شبهت



- ❖ likeness means the state of being like, or resemblance.
- Michelle bears a strong likeness to her older sister Kate.
- میشل شباهت زیادی به خواهر بزرگترش کیت دارد.

adv.

moreover

[məˈrəʊvər]

علاوه بر این



- ❖ moreover means besides or in addition to something.
- It's cold outside. moreover, the wind is very strong.
- بیرون هوا سرد است. علاوه بر این، باد بسیار شدید است.

n.

perspective [pər'spektɪv]

دیدگاه



- ❖ A perspective is the way you think about something.
- The man's speech gave me a new perspective on our country.
- سخنرانی آن مرد دیدگاه جدیدی درباره‌ی کشورمان به من داد.

adj.

rational ['ræʃnəl]

منطقی



- ❖ When something is rational, it is normal or practical.
- It is hard to think in a rational way when you are scared.
- وقتی که می‌ترسید، خیلی سخت است که به شیوه منطقی فکر کنید.

v.

recover [rɪ'kʌvər]

ترمیم شدن، بازیابی شدن، آباد شدن



- ❖ To recover is to go back to normal after something bad happens.
- I hope the city will recover soon after the flood.
- امیدوارم که شهر به زودی پس از بازسازی شود.

v.

rely [rɪ'laɪ]

متکی بودن، اعتماد کردن



- ❖ To rely on something or someone is to trust or depend on them.
- The boy relied on his older brother to help him.
- پسر به برادرش اعتماد کرد که به او کمک می‌کند.

v.

shock

[ʃɑ:k]

شوکه شدن



- ❖ To shock people is to surprise them.
- The man was shocked by the news.

➤ مرد توسط خبر شوکه شد.

adj.

shy

[ʃaɪ]

خجالتی



- ❖ When people are shy, they are nervous around people strange to them.
- The girl was too shy to try out for the play.

➤ دختر آن قدر خجالتی بود که نمی‌توانست بازی را امتحان کند.

v.

stare

[ster]

خیره شدن



- ❖ To stare at something is to look at it for a long time.
- The young couple stared into each other's eyes.

➤ زوج جوان به چشم‌های یکدیگر خیره شدند.

adv.

thus

[ðʌs]

بنابراین



- ❖ thus means as a result or for that reason.
- The sun was shining. thus, I wore my sunglasses.

➤ خورشید می‌تابید بنابراین عینک آفتابی‌ام را پوشیدم.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. Jennifer looked for a long time at the girl who looked just like her sister.
st _____
2. Even though the noise scared me, I returned to my calm mood.
re _____
3. The man's speech went on for another thirty minutes.
la _____
4. I am quiet in a big crowd of people.
s _____
5. My little brother woke up with a really bad hot temperature today.
f _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. My friend said I took her book, _____.
___ a. but I didn't, so I denied it
___ b. so I relied on what she told me
2. When I opened the door, _____.
___ a. I was shocked by what I saw
___ b. it made a funny gesture
3. My teacher _____.
___ a. wanted to take a likeness of the class this year
___ b. emphasized that students must follow the classroom rules
4. The book was easy for me to read, _____.
___ a. thus I finished it in two days
___ b. so I recovered a harder book
5. The things my sister said _____.
___ a. seemed really shy
___ b. gave me a new perspective

Exercise 3

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. chamber / fever

He woke up feeling sick and with a high _____.

The door to her private _____ was unlocked.

2. perspective / likeness

Many people have a different _____ than me.

The painting didn't have much of a _____ to my dad.

3. rational / document

The _____ had to be signed by ten people.

My brother was too excited to have a _____ plan.

4. stared / shocked

The loud noise _____ me.

The monkey _____ at me through the bars.

5. moreover / flu

I'm not old enough to drive; _____, it seems kind of scary.

I'm scared that I might get the _____ this winter.

6. interrupted / gesture

The boy made a _____ to his friends to follow him.

My sister ran in and _____ what I was saying.

7. thus / relied

I trusted the man, so I _____ on his advice.

I could not depend on the man; _____, I had to do it all myself.

8. recovered / lasted

The basketball game _____ longer than three hours.

I was sick, but I _____ in time to go on the field trip.

9. deny / shy

The girl at the store was _____, so she didn't talk.

The man did not _____ that he liked ice cream.

10. emphasized / freeze

She _____ the need for good manners.

Did the flowers _____ last night due to the snow?

Prince Sam

Sam's mother cooked at the royal palace. One day, he went to work with her. She **emphasized** that he should stay in the kitchen. But Sam was bored. **Thus**, he decided to look around.

He went around a corner. It **shocked** him to see a boy who had a strong **likeness** to him. Sam soon **recovered**. The other boy **stared** at him. Then he spoke. "Come with me."

He needed to be **rational**. But he couldn't **deny** that he wanted to go. So he followed the boy to a **chamber**. "I am Prince Bertram," the boy said.

Sam felt **shy** talking to a prince. "I'm Sam."

"Trade places with me." The prince said.

"We can't. My mother will kill me. **Moreover**, I don't know anything about being a prince."

"No one will find out," the prince **interrupted**. "We look the same, and even our **gestures** are the same. It will only **last** for a week."

Sam said OK. Soon, Sam's **perspective** on being a prince changed. He spent most of his day signing royal **documents**. At night, the prince's chamber was cold. He thought he was going to **freeze** or get sick with a **fever** or the **flu**. He was happy when the week ended. So was the prince.

"I didn't know how to do anything," the prince said. "I've always **relied** on my servants to do everything for me."

"I think I like being a regular person," Sam said. "Being a prince isn't fun." So, they both returned to their normal positions and enjoyed their lives more than before.



شاهزاده سم

مادر سم در کاخ سلطنتی آشپزی می‌کرد. یک روز، سم با او به سرکار رفت. مادرش تاکید کرد که او باید در آشپزخانه بماند. اما سم خسته شده بود. بنابراین، تصمیم گرفت نگاهی به اطراف بیاندازد.

او به گوشه‌ای رفت. از دیدن پسری که شباهت زیادی به خودش داشت شوکه شد. سم بلافاصله به خود آمد. پسر روبرویی به او خیره شد. سپس پسر صحبت کرد. "با من بیا."

لازم بود که منطقی باشد. اما نمی‌توانست انکار کند که می‌خواهد برود. بنابراین او پسر را تا درون اتاق خواب دنبال کرد. پسر گفت: "من شاهزاده برترام هستم."

سم از صحبت با یک شاهزاده احساس خجالت کرد. "من سم هستم."

شاهزاده گفت: "جایت را با من عوض کن."

"ما نمی‌توانیم. مادرم مرا خواهد کشت. علاوه بر این، من چیزی در مورد شاهزاده بودن نمی‌دانم."

شاهزاده سخنش را قطع کرد. "هیچ کس متوجه نخواهد شد. ما شبیه هم هستیم و حتی حرکات ما یکسان است. این کار فقط یک هفته طول خواهد کشید."

سم گفت بسیار خوب. به زودی، دید سم نسبت به شاهزاده بودن تغییر کرد. او بیشتر ورزش را با امضا کردن مدارک سلطنتی گذراند. شب، اتاق شاهزاده سرد بود. او فکر کرد که دارد یخ می‌زند یا با یک تب یا آنفلونزا مریض شده است. وقتی که هفته به پایان رسید، خوشحال بود. شاهزاده نیز خوشحال بود.

شاهزاده گفت: "من نمی‌دانستم چطور هیچ چیز رو انجام بدم." من مجبور بودم همیشه بر خدمتکارانم تکیه کنم که همه‌ی کارها را برای من انجام دهند."

سم گفت: "من فکر می‌کنم که دوست دارم یک آدم عادی باشم." شاهزاده بودن شوخی آمیز نیست."

بنابراین، آن‌ها هر دو به موقعیت عادی خود برگشتند و بیش از پیش از زندگیشان لذت بردند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is the main idea of this story?
 - a. A boy who denies that he's a prince
 - b. A student who's too shy to talk to a prince
 - c. How two boys who bore a likeness to each other traded places
 - d. A prince who has a rational perspective
2. What happened after Sam ran into the prince?
 - a. Sam was too shocked to recover.
 - b. The prince stared at Sam.
 - c. Sam couldn't talk; thus, he ran away.
 - d. Sam made a gesture.
3. What did Sam think about being a prince?
 - a. He thought it was fun while it lasted.
 - b. He didn't like it; moreover, he missed his mother.
 - c. He liked to rely on the servants at the palace.
 - d. He was afraid he would freeze or get a fever or the flu.
4. What did the Prince miss when he was being Sam?
 - a. Sleeping in his own chamber
 - b. Having servants do things for him
 - c. Signing all of the official documents
 - d. People not emphasizing how important he was
5. Why didn't Sam like the prince's chamber?



لیست کلمات درس 17

- aim (n.)
- attach (v.)
- bet (v.)
- carriage (n.)
- classic (adj.)
- commute (v.)
- confirm (v.)
- criticize (v.)
- differ (v.)
- expense (n.)
- formal (adj.)
- height (n.)
- invent (v.)
- junior (adj.)
- labor (n.)
- mechanic (n.)
- prime (adj.)
- shift (v.)
- signal (n.)
- sincere (adj.)

n.

aim

[eɪm]

هدف



- ❖ An aim is a goal someone wants to make happen.
- My aim is to become a helicopter pilot.

➤ هدف من این است که خلبان هلی کوپتر شوم.

v.

attach

[ə'tætʃ]

وصل کردن ، گذاشتن



- ❖ To attach is to put two things together.
- I attached the socks to the clothesline to dry.

➤ من جوراب ها را روی طناب گذاشتم تا خشک شوند.

v.

bet

[bet]

شرط بندی کردن



- ❖ To bet is to risk money on the result of a game or a business.
- How much will you bet that your horse will win?

➤ چقدر شرط می بندید که اسبتان برنده خواهد شد؟

n.

carriage

['kærɪdʒ]

کالسکه



- ❖ A carriage is a vehicle pulled by a horse.
- We took a carriage ride in the park.

➤ ما در پارک کالسکه سواری کردیم.



adj.

classic

['klæsɪk]

کلاسیک

- ❖ If something is classic, it is typical.
- The athlete made a classic mistake - he started running too soon.
- آن ورزشکار اشتباهی کلاسیک (ساده) مرتکب شد - او خیلی زود شروع به دویدن کرد.



v.

commute

[kə'mju:t]

مسافرت کردن، هر روز از حومه بشهر و بلعکس سفر کردن، رفت

- ❖ To commute is to travel a long distance to get to work.
- I usually commute to work on the train.
- من معمولا به محل کار با قطار رفت آمد می‌کنم.



v.

confirm

[kən'fɜ:rm]

ثابت کردن، تایید کردن

- ❖ To confirm is to make sure something is correct.
- Winning the game confirmed that James was a good player.
- پیروزی در این مسابقه ثابت کرد که جیمز بازیکن خوبی بود.



v.

criticize

['krɪtɪsaɪz]

انتقاد کردن

- ❖ To criticize is to say you do not like someone or something.
- He criticized his wife for spending too much money.
- او از همسرش به دلیل خرج کردن پول زیاد انتقاد کرد.

v.

differ

['dɪfə]

فرق داشتن



❖ To differ is to not be the same as another person or thing.

➤ I differ from my brother: he is short, while I am tall.

➤ من با برادرم فرق دارم: او قد کوتاه است در حالی که من قد بلند هستم.

n.

expense

[ɪk'spens]

هزینه



❖ An expense is the money that people spend on something.

➤ She wrote down all the expenses for her trip.

➤ او تمام هزینه‌های سفرش را یادداشت کرد.

adj.

formal

['fɔ:rməl]

رسمی



❖ If something is formal, it is done in an official way.

➤ It was a formal dinner, so we wore our best clothes.

➤ آن یک شام رسمی بود، بنابراین بهترین لباس‌هایمان را پوشیدیم.

n.

height

[haɪt]

قد



❖ height is how tall someone or something is.

➤ My height is 168 centimeters.

➤ قد من 168 سانتی متر است.

v.

invent

[ɪn'vent]

اختراع کردن

- ❖ To invent something is to create something that never existed before.
- My grandfather has invented some interesting things.
- پدربزرگم چیزهای جالبی را اختراع کرده است.



adj.

junior

['dʒuːniər]

تازه کار

- ❖ If someone is junior in their job, they do not have a lot of power.
- When she started at the company, she was only a junior manager.
- هنگامی که او در این شرکت شروع به کار کرد تنها یک مدیر تازه کار بود.



n.

labor

['leɪbər]

کار (کار فیزیکی و دستی)

- ❖ labor is the act of doing or making something.
- Building the house took a lot of labor.
- ساختن خانه کار زیادی برد.



n.

mechanic

[mə'kænik]

مکانیک، تعمیرکار

- ❖ A mechanic is someone who fixes vehicles or machines.
- We took the car to the mechanic to be fixed.
- ما ماشین را به تعمیرکار دادیم تا تعمیر شود.





adj.

prime

[praɪm]

اصلی

❖ If something is prime, it is the most important one.

➤ Dirty air is a prime cause of illness.

➤ هوای آلوده عامل اصلی بیماری است.

v.

shift

[ʃɪft]

تغییر مکان/جهت دادن

❖ To shift to something is to move into a new place or direction.

➤ He shifted to the other side of the table to eat his breakfast.

➤ او برای خوردن صبحانه‌اش به آن طرف میز تغییر مکان داد.

n.

signal

[ˈsɪgnəl]

علامت

❖ A signal is a sound or action that tells someone to do something.

➤ The coach blew his whistle as a signal to begin the game.

➤ مربی در سوت خود به عنوان علامتی برای شروع بازی دمید.

adj.

sincere

[sɪnˈsɪr]

بی‌ریا، صادق

❖ When people are sincere, they tell the truth.

➤ He sounded sincere when he apologized to me.

➤ هنگامی که از من عذرخواهی کرد بسیار صادق بنظر می‌رسید.



Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to create something for the first time
a. aim b. signal c. mechanic d. invent
- most important
a. differ b. junior c. prime d. commute
- to move
a. attach b. shift c. bet d. confirm
- cost
a. carriage b. expense c. height d. labor
- typical
a. classic b. criticize c. formal d. sincere

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

- I started the job as a low-level manager at the bank.
j _____
- The nurse measured how tall I am.
my h _____
- Building the house took many hours of work.
l _____
- Marcus gave a truthful apology after making the mistake.
s _____
- We are going to take a ride in a horse-pulled vehicle.
c _____

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the **bolded** word that makes the better sense.

1. ___ a. It is a good idea to **bet** your money on silly things.
___ b. You should go to a **mechanic** if you have a problem with your car.
2. ___ a. Drivers use **signals** to make their cars go faster.
___ b. You should **attach** a stamp to a letter before you mail it.
3. ___ a. If you and your date **differ** too much, you might not like each other.
___ b. When you **confirm** the results of the test, you make them better.
4. ___ a. It is O.K. to wear sandals to a **formal** party.
___ b. Teachers often **criticize** lazy students.
5. ___ a. People must pay attention to **signals** when they are driving.
___ b. When you visit a **mechanic** they will sell you a new car.
6. ___ a. You should wear nice clothing if you go to a **formal** event.
___ b. Good friends like to **criticize** each other.
7. ___ a. Husbands and wives who **differ** are often very busy people.
___ b. If you **commute** to work, you have to travel a certain distance.
8. ___ a. It is a good idea to **confirm** your plans before you travel.
___ b. If you **attach** a large sign to your door, no one will see it.
9. ___ a. If your **aim** is to learn how to swim, you must get in the water.
___ b. Everyone **commutes** in math class.
10. ___ a. People who have an **aim** to succeed are very lazy.
___ b. When you **bet** money, you might lose it.

Henry Ford's Famous Car

My name is Henry Ford, and I **invented** a car called the Model T. I used to watch **carriages** on the streets. They fascinated me. Then I got a job as a **junior mechanic**. My father **criticized** me. He wanted me to run the farm. But I did not **shift** my plans.

Then I worked for the Detroit Auto Company. But I wanted to make cars using less **labor**. That way, there would be fewer **expenses**. I started the Ford Motor Company in 1903. At first, the company did not do well. But many people were **betting** on my success. I also had a **sincere aim** to make a car that anybody could buy.

Then, in 1908, I introduced the Model-T in a **formal** ceremony. It **confirmed** that I was right: it was possible to build a car my way!

The Model T **differed** from other vehicles. Workers could **attach** different parts for cars or trucks. This saved time. One Model T could be put together in 93 minutes. All of them had the same **classic** design. They were all the same size and **height**. The **prime** reason for doing this was to save money.

Over 19 years, I sold over 15 million Model Ts. This sent a **signal** to other companies. People would buy cars to **commute** to work if the price was low enough.



ماشین مشهور هنری فورد

اسم من هنری فورد است، و من ماشینی بنام مدل تی را اختراع کردم. من عادت داشتم کالسکه‌ها را در خیابان‌ها تماشا کنم. آن‌ها مرا مجذوب می‌کردند. بعد شغلی به عنوان یک مکانیک تازه کار بدست آوردم. پدرم از من انتقاد کرد. او می‌خواست من مزرعه را اداره کنم. اما من برنامه‌ی خودم را تغییر ندادم.

سپس برای شرکت خودروسازی دیترویت کار کردم. اما من می‌خواستم با استفاده از نیروی کار کمتر ماشین‌ها را بسازم. از این طریق هزینه‌های کمتری به وجود می‌آمد. شرکت موتور فورد را در سال ۱۹۰۳ تاسیس کردم. در ابتدا، شرکت به خوبی عمل نمی‌کرد. اما بسیاری از مردم روی موفقیت من شرط بندی می‌کردند. همچنین باید یک هدف صادقانه داشتم که ماشینی بسازم که هر کسی بتواند آن را بخرد.

سپس در سال ۱۹۰۸، مدل T را در یک مراسم رسمی معرفی کردم. این ثابت کرد که حق با من بود: این امکان وجود داشت ماشین را به روش خودم بسازم!

مدل T از دیگر وسایل نقلیه متفاوت بود. کارگران می‌توانستند قطعات مختلفی را به ماشین‌ها یا کامیون‌ها وصل کنند. این کار در زمان صرفه جویی می‌کرد. می‌شد که یک مدل T در ۹۳ دقیقه کنار هم قرار گیرد. همه آنها همان طرح کلاسیک را داشتند. همه‌ی آنها در قد و اندازه یکسان بودند. دلیل اصلی برای انجام این کار صرفه جویی در هزینه بود.

طی ۱۹ سال، من بیش از ۱۵ میلیون مارک مدل T را فروختم. این امر پیامی برای سایر شرکت‌ها فرستاد. اگر قیمت به اندازه کافی پایین باشد مردم برای رفتن به محل کار اتومبیل می‌خرند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How Ford attached cars and engines
 - b. How Ford aimed to build a better car
 - c. Why Ford shifted away from carriages
 - d. Why Ford bet on the gasoline engine
2. How did the Model T change other car companies?
 - a. It confirmed that their expenses were large.
 - b. It made workers criticize their bosses about their labor .
 - c. It created a signal for them to start making cheaper cars.
 - d. It forced car companies to bet on Ford's success.
3. In paragraph 1, we can infer that _____.
 - a. Ford had a very formal childhood
 - b. Ford differed in thought from his father
 - c. Ford was not of great height
 - d. Ford's father was sincere
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the Model-T had a classic design
 - b. people would use cars to commute if they weren't expensive
 - c. Ford worked as a junior mechanic
 - d. the first vehicle from the Ford Motor Company was a truck
5. What was the prime reason for making the Model T with one design?



لیست کلمات درس 18

- ability (n.)
- agriculture (n.)
- cartoon (n.)
- ceiling (n.)
- convince (v.)
- curious (adj.)
- delay (v.)
- diary (n.)
- element (n.)
- faith (n.)
- grain (n.)
- greet (v.)
- investigate (v.)
- joy (n.)
- label (n.)
- monk (n.)
- odd (adj.)
- pause (v.)
- priest (n.)
- profession (n.)

n.

ability

[ə'biləti]

توانایی



❖ ability is the quality of a person being able to do something well.

➤ His swimming abilities let him cross the entire lake.

➤ توانایی‌های شنا کردنش به او اجازه می‌داد از کل دریاچه عبور کند.

n.

agriculture

['ægrɪkʌltʃər]

کشاورزی



❖ agriculture is the growing of food and animals.

➤ The farmer studied agriculture in college.

➤ کشاورز رشته کشاورزی در دانشگاه خوانده است.

n.

cartoon

[kɑ:r'tu:n]

کارتن، کاریکاتور



❖ A cartoon is a funny drawing.

➤ Sometimes, people draw cartoons for the newspaper.

➤ گاهی مردم برای روزنامه کاریکاتور می‌کشند.

n.

ceiling

['si:lɪŋ]

سقف



❖ The ceiling is the top of a room.

➤ He painted the ceiling with a special roller.

➤ او سقف را با یک غلتک مخصوص نقاشی کرد.

v.

convince

[kən'vɪns]

متقاعد کردن

- ❖ To convince someone means to make them sure of something.
- She convinced me to buy the house.

➤ او مرا متقاعد کرد تا آن خانه را بخرم.



adj.

curious

['kjʊəriəs]

کنجکاو

- ❖ When you are curious about something, you want to know more about it.
- I opened up the clock because I was curious about how it worked.

➤ ساعت را باز کردم زیرا کنجکاو بودم که چگونه کار می‌کند.



v.

delay

[di'leɪ]

تاخیر داشتن، به تاخیر انداختن، معطل شدن

- ❖ To delay means to wait to do something.
- I was delayed at the airport for over two hours.

➤ من بیش از دو ساعت در فرودگاه معطل شدم.



n.

diary

['daɪəri]

دفترچه یادداشت روزانه

- ❖ A diary is a book in which people write their personal experiences.
- I do not let anybody read my diary.

➤ اجازه نمی‌دهم که کسی دفترچه یادداشت‌های روزانه‌ام را بخواند.



n.

element

['elɪmənt]

اساس، عنصر، اصل



- ❖ An element of something is a particular part of it.
- Tackling an opponent is Johnny's favorite element of American football.
- تکل زدن به حریف بخش مورد علاقه جانی در فوتبال آمریکایی است.

n.

faith

[feɪθ]

ایمان، باور



- ❖ When people have faith in something, they believe in it and trust it.
- The sick girl had faith in doctors. She knew they would make her better.
- دختر بیمار به پزشکان ایمان داشت. او می‌دانست که آنها او را بهتر می‌کنند.

n.

grain

[greɪn]

غلات



- ❖ grain is food crops such as wheat, corn, rice or oats.
- The farmer planted two fields of grain this year.
- کشاورز امسال دو مزرعه غلات داشت.

v.

greet

[gri:t]

استقبال کردن



- ❖ To greet someone means to meet and welcome them.
- When my friend came over, I greeted him at the door.
- هنگامی که دوستم به آنجا آمد من در از او استقبال کردم.

v.

investigate [in'vestigeit]

تحقیق کردن، بررسی کردن



❖ To investigate means to search for something or learn about it.

➤ The detective went to investigate the crime.

➤ کاراگاه رفت تا درباره جنایت تحقیق کند.

n.

joy [dʒɔɪ]

لذت



❖ joy is a feeling you get when you are really happy.

➤ I love baseball. I feel joy when I play.

➤ من بیسبال را دوست دارم. هنگامی که بازی میکنم احساس لذت می‌کنم.

n.

label ['leɪbl]

برچسب



❖ A label is a tag that tells about something.

➤ The label on the back of your shirt will tell you what size it is.

➤ برچسب پشت پیراهن به شما اندازه آن را نشان خواهد داد.

n.

monk [mɒŋk]

راحم



❖ A monk is a religious person who lives a simple life.

➤ The monks knew a lot about religion.

➤ راحبان درباره‌ی مذهب چیزهای زیادی می‌دانستند.

adj.

odd

[ɑ:d]

عجیب، غریب، غی عادی

- ❖ When something is odd, it is unusual.
- Her cat is odd. It walks on two feet.

➤ گربه‌ی او عجیب غریب است. او روی دو پا راه می‌رود.

v.

pause

[pɔ:z]

مکث کردن

- ❖ To pause means to stop doing something for a while.
- Since she was so hungry, she paused to make a snack.
- از آنجایی که او بسیار گرسنه بود مکث کرد تا میان وعده بخورد.

n.

priest

[pri:st]

کشیش

- ❖ A priest is a person trained to perform religious duties.
- The priest taught us about God.

➤ کشیش درباره‌ی خدا به ما آموزش داد.

n.

profession

[prə'feʃn]

شغل، حرفه

- ❖ A profession is a person's job.
- He loved sailing, so he chose to work on ships as a profession.
- او شیفته‌ی سفر دریایی بود. بنابراین کار روی کشتی‌ها را به عنوان یک حرفه انتخاب کرد.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. investigate
a. to search for
b. to meet
c. to stop
d. to make someone sure
2. element
a. the top of a room
b. a funny drawing
c. a tag
d. a part of something
3. odd
a. a religious man
b. wanting to know more
c. not normal
d. a happy feeling
4. priest
a. a private book
b. a person trained to perform religious duties
c. food crops
d. a funny drawing
5. label
a. things you do well
b. a tag that tells about something
c. your job
d. a particular part of something
6. pause
a. to search for
b. to meet
c. to stop
d. to make someone sure
7. agriculture
a. growing food
b. believing in something
c. not normal
d. wanting to know more
8. diary
a. a job
b. food crops
c. the top of a room
d. a private book
9. faith
a. a happy feeling
b. things you do well
c. a tag
d. belief in something
10. curious
a. the business of farming
b. wanting to know more
c. a religious man
d. things you do well

Exercise 2

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. joy / odd

The boy was full of _____ when his new brother was born.
The store was _____. It was only open one day a week.

2. faith / diary

The girl writes in her _____ every night.
The boy's _____ in his father was strong.

3. cartoons / profession

The _____ in this book make me laugh.
I want to get involved in a _____ where I am helping others.

4. convinced / greeted

I _____ my new neighbors for the first time.
She _____ me that she was right.

5. label / abilities

The _____ on my jacket says "do not wash."
The smart child had many _____ when it came to math.

Exercise 3

Circle two words that are related in each group.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. a. agriculture | b. label | c. grain | d. odd |
| 2. a. diary | b. abilities | c. monk | d. priest |
| 3. a. faith | b. curious | c. investigate | d. greet |
| 4. a. delay | b. ceiling | c. joy | d. pause |
| 5. a. greet | b. curious | c. profession | d. odd |

The Priest

A young **priest** was always sad. He was good at his **profession**, but he still had no **joy**. He visited a group of wise **monks**.

When he got to the monks' house, they **greeted** him and let him in. The monks asked the priest, "What is the matter?" The priest said, "I should be happy, but I am not. I don't know what to do." The wise monks **paused** for a minute. Then one said, "We are **convinced** of your **faith**. You are a very good priest. But to find joy, you have to do more. Above all, **investigate** the **elements** of your life that you love." The priest thought that this answer was **odd**, but he was **curious**.

The next day, the priest thought about his **abilities**. He got a few ideas, and he did not want to **delay** any longer. He liked to draw, so he made some **cartoons**. He also liked to write, so he started a **diary**. He was interested in **agriculture**, so he planted some **grains**. He made jam from berries. He made his own **labels** to put on the jars of jam. He painted his **ceiling**. The priest learned something. It is not too hard to be happy after all. All one has to do is find things they like doing, and do them!



کشیش

کشیش جوانی همیشه غمگین بود. در حرفه‌اش خوب بود، اما هنوز هیچ لذتی نداشت. او گروهی از راهبان خردمند را ملاقات کرد.

وقتی به خانه راهب‌ها رسید، آنها از او استقبال کردند و به او اجازه ورود دادند. راهب‌ها از کشیش پرسیدند: "موضوع چیست؟" کشیش گفت: "من باید خوشحال باشم، اما نیستم. من نمی‌دانم چه باید بکنم." راهبان خردمند برای لحظه‌ای مکث کردند. سپس یکی گفت: "ما به ایمان شما اعتقاد داریم. شما کشیش بسیار خوبی هستی. اما برای یافتن لذت، باید کارهای بیشتری انجام دهید. از همه مهم‌تر، درباره‌ی اصول زندگی‌تان که علاقه دارید تحقیق کنید." کشیش گمان کرد که این پاسخ عجیب بود، اما او کنجکاو بود.

روز بعد کشیش در مورد توانایی‌هایش فکر کرد. او مقدار کمی ایده به دست آورد، و او نمی‌خواست بیش از این معطل کند. او دوست داشت نقاشی بکشد، بنابراین او تعدادی کاریکاتور درست کرد. او همچنین دوست داشت بنویسد، بنابراین دفتر یادداشت روزانه‌ای را شروع کرد. او به کشاورزی علاقه داشت، بنابراین مقداری غلات کاشته بود. از توت فرنگی‌ها مربا درست کرد. او برچسب‌هایش را برای گذاشتن روی شیشه‌های مربا سفارش داد. او سقفش را نقاشی کرد. کشیش چیزی را یاد گرفت. هر چه باشد خیلی سخت نیست که خوشحال باشی. تنها کاری که باید کرد این است که کارهایی را که دوست داری انجام دهی پیدا کنی و آنها را انجام دهی!

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why monks have faith in God
 - b. How a priest finds joy
 - c. How to investigate odd answers
 - d. Why a priest did not like his profession
2. Why did the priest go to the monks?
 - a. Because he was convinced that he was a fine priest
 - b. Because he wanted to greet them
 - c. Because he wanted their help
 - d. Because he wanted to tell them how happy he became
3. After the priest talked to the monks, what did he think about?
 - a. His abilities
 - b. His curious job
 - c. His pauses
 - d. His delays
4. According to the passage, all the following are true of the priest EXCEPT _____.
 - a. he painted his ceiling
 - b. he tried agriculture and planted grains
 - c. he drew cartoons
 - d. he forgot to put labels on his jam
5. Why did the priest get a diary?



لیست کلمات درس 19

- adopt (v.)
- beg (v.)
- beyond (prep.)
- costume (n.)
- exclaim (v.)
- extend (v.)
- fool (n.)
- forbid (v.)
- illustrate (v.)
- indeed (adv.)
- interpret (v.)
- kindly (adv.)
- motive (n.)
- nest (n.)
- origin (n.)
- reception (n.)
- reject (n.)
- silence (n.)
- stream (n.)
- tone (n.)

v.

adopt

[ə'dɑ:pt]

به فرزندی پذیرفتن



- ❖ To adopt someone is to make them as a part of one's own family.
- The girl was adopted by the couple when she was three.
- دختر زمانی که سه ساله بود توسط این زوج به فرزندی پذیرفته شد.

v.

beg

[beg]

گدایی کردن، التماس کردن



- ❖ To beg is to ask for something one really wants.
- The man begged for some money.

➤ مرد برای مقداری پول گدایی کرد.

prep.

beyond

[bi'jɑ:nd]

آن سوی



- ❖ If A is beyond B, A is farther away.
- John's house is beyond that lake.

➤ خانه‌ی جان آنسوی آن دریاچه است.

n.

costume

['kɑ:stʊ:m]

لباس خاص (مثلا در هالووین یا یک مهمانی خاص)



- ❖ A costume is a set of clothes people wear for a particular occasion.
- The woman wore a mask with her costume.

➤ زن یک ماسک همراه با لباس مخصوصش پوشید.



v.

exclaim**[ɪk'skleɪm]**

فریاد زدن



- ❖ To exclaim is to say something loudly, usually due to being excited.
- Look at her dress!"" Sara exclaimed.

➤ سارا فریاد زد: "به لباسش نگاه کن!"

v.

extend**[ɪk'stend]**

دراز کردن، گسترش دادن



- ❖ To extend is to stretch out or reach.
- The boy extended his hand to catch the ball.

➤ پسر برای گرفتن توپ دستش را دراز کرد.

n.

fool**[fu:l]**

احمق، ابله



- ❖ A fool is someone who makes unwise choices.
- The girl was a fool for playing too close to the water.
- دختر احمق بود که خیلی نزدیک آب، بازی می‌کرد.

v.

forbid**[fər'bid]**

ممنوع کردن



- ❖ To forbid is to tell someone they cannot do something.
- My father forbids watching TV while we're eating dinner.
- پدرم تماشای تلویزیون را هنگام شام خوردن ممنوع کرده است.

v.

illustrate

['iləstreɪt]

نشان دادن، روشن ساختن



- ❖ To illustrate is to show something by drawing a picture.
- The executive illustrated the decreasing profits of the company.
- مدیر کاهش سود شرکت را با تصویر (نمودار) نشان داد.

adv.

indeed

[ɪn'di:d]

حقیقتاً، واقعا



- ❖ indeed means truly or really.
- The birthday party was indeed fun last night.
- دیشب مهمانی تولد واقعا سرگرم کننده بود.

v.

interpret

[ɪn'tɜ:prɪt]

تفسیر کردن، تعبیر کردن



- ❖ To interpret is to explain what something means.
- The woman interpreted what her co-worker was trying to say.
- زن آنچه را که همکارش سعی می کرد بگوید تفسیر کرد.

adv.

kindly

['kaɪndli]

با مهربانی



- ❖ If people do something kindly, they do it in a nice way.
- The stranger kindly cared for the hurt man.
- غریبه با مهربانی از مرد آسیب دیده نگهداری کرد.

n.

motive

['mɒtɪv]

انگیزه



- ❖ A motive is the reason someone does something.
- His motive for studying so hard is to get into a good college.
- انگیزه او از مطالعه بسیار سخت رسیدن به یک دانشگاه خوب است.

n.

nest

[nest]

لانه



- ❖ A nest is a place where a bird lays its eggs.
- The bird laid her eggs in the nest that she made.
- پرنده تخم‌هایش را در لانه‌ای که درست کرده بود گذاشت.

n.

origin

['ɔːrɪdʒɪn]

منشا، سرچشمه، منبع



- ❖ The origin of someone or something is where they come from.
- The origin of the honey that we eat is from a beehive.
- منبع عسلی که می‌خوریم از یک کندوی عسل است.

n.

reception

[rɪ'sepʃn]

مهمانی



- ❖ A reception is a party to welcome a person or celebrate an event.
- We all danced and had a good time at the wedding reception.
- همه‌ی ما در مهمانی عروسی رقصیدیم و اوقات خوبی داشتیم.

n.

reject

[rɪ'dʒekt]

رد کردن، نپذیرفتن

- ❖ To reject is to refuse something because you do not want it.
- The girl rejected the broken cup.

➤ دختر فنجان شکسته را نپذیرفت.

n.

silence

['saɪləns]

سکوت

- ❖ silence is complete quiet.
 - The man asked for silence while he worked on the problem.
- مرد هنگام کار کردن روی مسئله تقاضای سکوت کرد.

n.

stream

[stri:m]

نهر، رود، جوی

- ❖ A stream is a small river.
- The boy caught a fish in the stream.

➤ پسر یک ماهی از رود گرفت.

n.

tone

[toʊn]

لحن

- ❖ tone is the sound of someone's voice. It shows how they feel.
- My father's tone told me I had broken the rule.

➤ لحن پدرم به من گفت که من قانون را شکسته بودم.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to tell or explain meaning
a. adopt b. exclaim c. interpret d. reject
- a person without sense
a. fool b. nest c. stream d. vitamin
- clothes that people wear for a particular occasion
a. motive b. neat c. costume d. tone
- to reach or put out
a. beg b. extend c. forbid d. silence
- in a kind way
a. beyond b. illustrate c. indeed d. kindly

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

- When I found the lost cat, _____.
___ a. I asked my mom if we could adopt it
___ b. I extended my hurt foot
- When I visit other countries, _____.
___ a. I usually tell them how much better my country is than theirs
___ b. someone has to interpret what I say
- Not having enough money _____.
___ a. can put you beyond the forest
___ b. can indeed be a big problem
- At the start of class, _____.
___ a. the teacher kindly asked for us to stop talking
___ b. the teacher exclaimed the lesson
- The woman wanted to go to Africa. _____.
___ a. The tone of her voice was angry
___ b. Her motive was to help people

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

illustrate

fool

origin

rejected

costume

begged

forbids

stream

silence

reception

1. We had a big _____ to welcome my grandmother home from the hospital.
2. The man was a _____ for crossing the street without looking.
3. A friend asked me to _____ the book she wrote because I am an artist.
4. I sewed feathers on my _____ for the play.
5. My teacher _____ my paper because I didn't follow the directions.
6. I like being alone in the forest because of the _____ that's around me.
7. The boy who stole the bread _____ me not to tell.
8. Some fish swim up a _____ to lay their eggs.
9. We learned about the _____ of the Statue of Liberty.
10. My sister _____ anyone to come in her room without asking first.

Mrs. May and the Green Girl

One morning, people from a small town found a little girl by a **stream**. She seemed to be wearing a green **costume**. As the people got closer, they saw that the girl's skin was green!

"Oh my!" The people **exclaimed**. "What if her **motive** for coming to our town is bad? What if she has a strange **origin**?"

An old woman **kindly** went to her. "Look how scared she is. Please," she **begged**. "Do not **reject** her. I will **adopt** her."

There was **silence** until the judge spoke. "I don't know," he said in a worried **tone**. "But we cannot **forbid** you. I **indeed** hope you're not being a **fool**."

Mrs. May **extended** her hand to the girl. "Come with me. I won't hurt you."

The girl spoke a language Mrs. May didn't know. But she was able to **interpret** what the girl was trying to say. Sometimes the girl drew pictures to **illustrate** what she meant.

The green girl was from a place far **beyond** the sun. There, people lived in **nests** built in trees. They only ate green leaves, which made their skin green.

"Well, you can't just eat leaves," Mrs. May said. She fed the green girl home-cooked meals, and soon the girl wasn't green anymore. The people had a huge **reception** to welcome her as a citizen of the town.



خانم می و دختر سبز

یک روز صبح، مردم یک شهر کوچک دختر کوچکی را در کنار رودی پیدا کردند. به نظر می‌رسید که او یک لباس محلی سبز پوشیده است. همین که مردم نزدیک‌تر رسیدند، دیدند که پوست دختر سبز است! مردم با تعجب فریاد زدند: "آه خدای من!" اگر انگیزه او برای آمدن به شهر ما بد باشد چه؟ اگر نژاد عجیب و غریبی داشته باشد چه؟

یک پیرزن با مهربانی به طرف او رفت. "بین چقدر ترسیده است. او التماس کرد." او را طرد نکنید. من او را به فرزندی خواهم پذیرفت."

سکوت برقرار شد تا اینکه قاضی صحبت کرد. او با لحنی نگران گفت "من نمی دانم." "اما ما نمی توانیم شما را منع کنیم. من واقعاً امیدوارم شما احمق نشده باشید."

خانم می دستش را به سوی دختر دراز کرد. "با من بیا. من به تو صدمه نخواهم زد."

دختر به زبانی صحبت کرد که خانم می نمی‌دانست. اما او قادر بود آنچه را که دختر سعی می‌کرد بگوید تفسیر کند. بعضی وقت‌ها دختر تصاویری می‌کشید که نشان می‌داد منظورش چیست. دختر سبز اهل جایی ماورای خورشید بود. آنجا، مردم در لانه‌های ساخته شده در درختان زندگی می‌کردند. آنها فقط برگ‌های سبز می‌خوردند، که پوست آنها را سبز کرده بود. خانم می گفت: "بسیار خوب، شما نمی‌توانید تنها برگ‌ها را بخورید." او به دختر سبز وعده‌های غذایی پخته شده خانگی می‌داد، و طولی نکشید که دختر دیگر سبز نبود. مردم با ضیافت بزرگی از او به عنوان شهروند آن شهر خوشامد گفتند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A reception for an old woman
 - b. A girl who liked to find nests in the trees
 - c. The people in the land beyond the sunset
 - d. How a woman kindly took care of a girl
2. What are the people trying to do to the green girl?
 - a. Beg her to jump into the stream
 - b. Make her leave
 - c. Forbid her to stay with Mrs. May
 - d. Interpret what she was trying to say
3. What is true of the green girl in the story?
 - a. She was good at drawing illustrating about what she meant.
 - b. She was indeed there to bring bad luck.
 - c. Her costume turned her skin green.
 - d. She asked Mrs. May to adopt her.
4. Why did Mrs. May extend her hand to the green girl?
 - a. To tell the girl that she was a fool
 - b. To show that she indeed had good motives
 - c. To exclaim that she didn't want to adopt her
 - d. To silence the crowd from hurting the girl
5. Why did the town judge speak in a worried tone?



لیست کلمات درس 20

- accomplish (v.)
- approve (v.)
- approximate (adj.)
- barrier (n.)
- detect (v.)
- duty (n.)
- elementary (adj.)
- failure (n.)
- gradual (adj.)
- immigrant (n.)
- insert (v.)
- instant (n.)
- poverty (n.)
- pretend (v.)
- rank (n.)
- recognition (n.)
- refrigerate (v.)
- rent (n.)
- retire (v.)
- statistic (n.)



v.

accomplish [ə'kɑ:mplɪʃ]

انجام دادن، به پایان رساندن، کامل کردن

- ❖ To accomplish something means to finish it.
- He accomplished his goal of running ten miles.

➤ او هدف خود را که ده مایل دویدن بود، انجام داد.



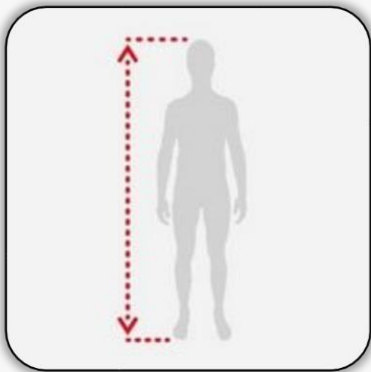
v.

approve [ə'pru:v]

تایید کردن، تصویب کردن

- ❖ To approve of something means you like it or are happy about it.
- Her co-workers approved her new plan.

➤ همکارانش طرح جدید او را تایید کردند.



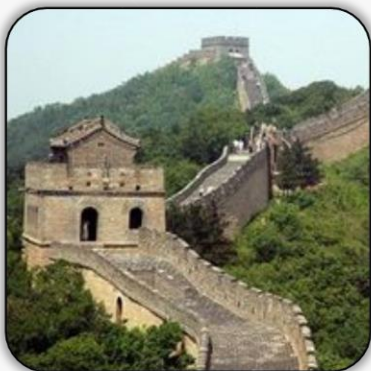
adj.

approximate [ə'pra:ksɪmət]

تقریبی

- ❖ approximate means to be close to an exact amount, number or time.
- My approximate height is two meters.

➤ قد تقریبی من دو متر است.



n.

barrier ['bæriə]

مانع

- ❖ A barrier is something that is in your way.
- The Great Wall was a barrier between China and its enemies.

➤ دیوار بزرگ مانعی بین چین و دشمنانش بود.

v.

detect

[dɪ'tekt]

تشخیص دادن



- ❖ To detect something means to notice or find something.
- The boy ran to the kitchen when he detected the smell of cookies.
- پسر وقتی بوی شیرینی‌ها را تشخیص داد به طرف آشپزخانه دوید.

n.

duty

['du:ti]

وظیفه



- ❖ A duty is something that a person has to do.
- It is parent's duty to take care of their children.
- وظیفه والدین این است که از بچه‌های خود مراقبت کنند.

adj.

elementary

[,eli'mentri]

ابتدایی



- ❖ When something is elementary, it is the first or most simple thing.
- Children go to elementary school before high school.
- بچه‌ها قبل از دبیرستان به مدرسه ابتدایی می‌روند.

n.

failure

['feɪljər]

شکست



- ❖ A failure happens when you do not do something right.
- My cooking ended in failure because I burned the food.
- آشپزی ام با شکست به پایان رسید، زیرا غذا را سوزاندم.



adj.

gradual

['grædʒuəl]

به تدریج، تدریجی

- ❖ When something is gradual, it happens slowly.
- Children learn to read at a gradual pace. They do not learn right away.
- بچه‌ها با سرعتی تدریجی خواندن یاد می‌گیرند. آنها بلافاصله یاد نمی‌گیرند.

n.

immigrant

['imigrənt]

مهاجر



- ❖ An immigrant is a person who moves to a different country.
- My parents were immigrants. They came from Poland.
- پدر و مادرم مهاجر بودند. آنها از لهستان آمدند.

v.

insert

[in'sɜ:rt]

قرار دادن



- ❖ To insert something means to put it in something else.
- The mailman inserted the letter into the mailbox.
- پستیچی نامه را در صندوق پست قرار داد.

n.

instant

['ɪnstənt]

لحظه، دم، آن



- ❖ An instant is a very short amount of time.
- A microwave oven cooks food in an instant.

➤ یک اجاق مایکروویو در یک لحظه غذا را می‌پزد.



n.

poverty

['pɑ:vərti]

فقر، تنگ دستی

- ❖ poverty is the state of being poor.
- poverty is a problem in many countries around the world.
- فقر یکی از مشکلات در بسیاری از کشورهای جهان است.



v.

pretend

[pri'tend]

تظاهر کردن، وانمود کردن

- ❖ To pretend means to make believe something is real.
- The boy liked to pretend he was a king.
- پسر دوست داشت که وانمود کند یک پادشاه است.



n.

rank

[ræŋk]

رتبه، مقام

- ❖ A person's rank is their place in an order of people.
- The man got to the rank of captain in the navy.
- مرد به مقام ناخدایی نیروی دریایی رسید.



n.

recognition

[,rekəg'nɪʃn]

قدردانی، سپاسگزاری

- ❖ recognition is getting praise from other people.
- The hero got recognition for his brave deed.
- قهرمان برای عمل شجاعانه‌اش مورد قدردانی قرار گرفت.



v.

refrigerate [ri'frɪdʒəreɪt]

(در یخچال وغیره) سرد نگهداشتن، خنک کردن

- ❖ To refrigerate something means to make it cold.
- Grocery stores refrigerate fruit to make it last long.

➤ فروشگاه‌های مواد غذایی میوه‌ها را برای ماندگاری بیشتر سرد نگه می‌دارند.



n.

rent [rent]

اجاره

- ❖ rent is the money people pay to someone to live in a certain place.
- To live in this house, I have to pay rent at the start of each month.

➤ برای زندگی در این خانه، مجبورم اجاره را اول هر ماه پرداخت کنم.



v.

retire [ri'taɪə]

بازنشسته شدن

- ❖ To retire is to leave a job, usually because of old age.
- My father is sixty-five years old. He is about to retire from work.

➤ پدرم 65 سال دارد. او به بازنشسته شدن از کار نزدیک است.



n.

statistic [stə'tɪstɪk]

آمار

- ❖ A statistic is a number that tells a fact about something.
- The statistics showed that we did just as well this year as last year.

➤ آمار نشان داد که ما به همان خوبی سال گذشته کار کردیم.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I need to make cold the warm soda.
refri _____
2. The numbers that tells a fact show it is more dangerous to ride in a car than an airplane.
stat _____
3. His father would agree with and like his plans to go to college.
app _____
4. It makes me sad that so many people suffer having no money.
pov _____
5. I could not get past the thing that was in my way.
bar _____
6. She does not have a dog, but she likes to make believe that she does.
pre _____
7. Watering the plants is my thing I have to do.
du ____
8. The loud noise made her wake up in a very short amount of time.
an in _____
9. To open the lock, put in the key.
i _____
10. He will have to leave if he does not pay the money to live here.
r _____

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

- a. Learning Spanish was a **gradual** process for me.
 b. The boy **retired** his mother.
- a. The bottle fell and broke in an **instant**.
 b. I **accomplish** sleeping before I go to bed.
- a. Four is the **approximate** number of forty.
 b. The old man **retired** from his job.
- a. It is not always easy to **accomplish** hard goals.
 b. The racecar won by going at a **gradual** speed.
- a. Peanuts are an **instant** to grow and eat.
 b. His **approximate** height is two meters.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

barrier

recognition

failure

elementary

immigrant

My new friend is an 1 _____ who came from Italy. He goes to the same 2 _____ school that I do. He does not know many English words. Having to learn new words is a hard 3 _____ for him to get past. When he says things wrong, he feels like a 4 _____. I tell him not to worry. Soon he will know English very well. When I help him learn, he is happy and gives me 5 _____ for my good deed.

Albert Einstein

My name is Albert Einstein. Many people know about the great things I've **accomplished**. But I had many **barriers** before I became famous.

I was born in Germany. When I was in **elementary** school, I already knew about math and **statistics**. When I was a boy, I **pretended** to be a great scientist. I loved school, but my life at home was hard. My father lost his job, so my family lived in **poverty**. We could not pay the **rent** in Germany. We became **immigrants** and went to Italy. I finished high school and went to college in Switzerland.

After college, I began writing about science. I did not reach success in an **instant**, though. At first, other scientists did not **approve** of my work. They thought I was a **failure**. Rising to the **rank** of an admired scientist was a **gradual** process. Soon, people started to notice that I was right. At last, I began to get some **recognition**.

I showed how to find the **approximate** size of very big things, like stars. I also **detected** and explained the movement of very small things, like atoms. And

for fun, I made a machine that could

refrigerate food by **inserting**

heat. I never **retired**. It

was my **duty** to keep

working. I overcame

many hard times,

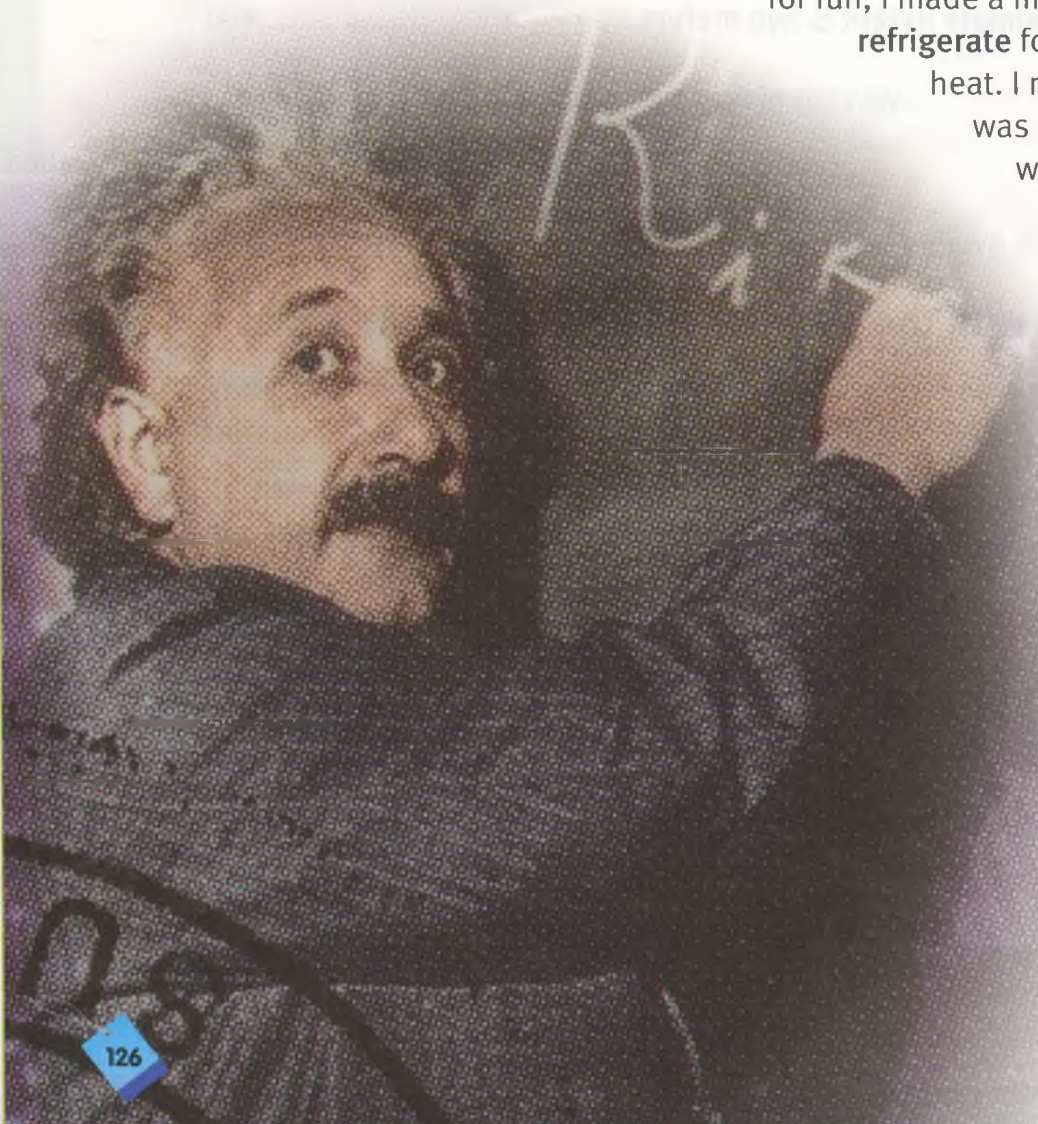
and I will be

remembered

for my

important

works.



آلبرت انشتین

اسم من آلبرت انیشتین است. بسیاری از مردم درباره چیزهای بزرگی که من انجام داده‌ام می‌دانند. اما قبل از اینکه مشهور بشم موانع زیادی داشتم.

من در آلمان به دنیا آمدم. زمانی که در مدرسه ابتدایی بودم، از قبل درباره ریاضی و آمار می‌دانستم. وقتی پسر بچه بودم، وانمود کردم که یک دانشمند بزرگ هستم. من عاشق مدرسه بودم، اما زندگی من در خانه سخت بود. پدرم شغلش را از دست داده بود، بنابراین خانواده‌ام در فقر زندگی می‌کردند. ما نمی‌توانستیم اجاره را در آلمان بپردازیم. ما مهاجر شدیم و به ایتالیا رفتیم. من دبیرستان را تمام کردم و در سوییس به دانشگاه رفتم.

بعد از دانشگاه شروع به نویسندگی علمی کردم. با این وجود، در یک لحظه به موفقیت نرسیدم. ابتدا دانشمندان دیگر کار من را تأیید نمی‌کردند. من فکر می‌کردم که یک بازنده هستم. ارتقا یافتن به مقام یک دانشمند تحسین برانگیز، یک فرآیند تدریجی است. به سرعت مردم متوجه شدند که حق با من است. سرانجام، من مقداری قدردانی بدست آوردم.

من چگونگی پیدا کردن اندازه تقریبی چیزهای خیلی بزرگ مثل ستارگان را نشان دادم. من همچنین حرکت چیزهای بسیار کوچک، مثل اتم‌ها را تشخیص و شرح دادم. و برای سرگرمی، من ماشینی ساختم که می‌توانست با افزودن حرارت غذا را منجمد کند. من هرگز بازنشسته نمی‌شوم. وظیفه‌ی من این بود که به کار ادامه دهم. من بر لحظات بسیار سخت غلبه کردم و به خاطر کارهای مهمم از من یاد خواهد شد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How Einstein got instant recognition
 - b. Why Einstein was a failure at first
 - c. How Einstein got past barriers to accomplish many great things
 - d. Why Einstein pretended to be sick while in elementary school

2. Why did Einstein's family become immigrants?
 - a. They were unhappy about new developments in math and statistics.
 - b. They couldn't pay their rent in Germany and had to leave.
 - c. His parents didn't want him to stay in school.
 - d. They wanted Einstein to go to college in Switzerland.

3. Why was Einstein's rise in the ranks of scientists gradual?
 - a. Einstein did not write down his ideas.
 - b. Einstein's ideas could not be proven.
 - c. Other scientists already knew about his ideas.
 - d. Other scientists didn't approve of his ideas at first.

4. According to the passage, all the following are true about Einstein EXCEPT _____ .
 - a. he found the approximate size of stars
 - b. he refrigerated food by inserting heat as a power source
 - c. he had a duty to retire
 - d. he detected the movement of atoms

5. Why did Albert's family live in poverty?



لیست کلمات درس 21

- astronaut (n.)
- awake (adj.)
- courage (n.)
- float (v.)
- grant (v.)
- gravity (n.)
- jewel (n.)
- miner (n.)
- mineral (n.)
- participate (v.)
- permission (n.)
- pour (v.)
- presence (n.)
- raw (adj.)
- satellite (n.)
- scale (n.)
- skip (v.)
- stretch (v.)
- telescope (n.)
- underground (adv.)

n.

astronaut

['æstrɒnɔ:t]

فضانورد



❖ An astronaut is a person that goes into outer space.

➤ The astronaut was walking on the moon.

➤ فضانورد در حال قدم زدن روی ماه بود.

adj.

awake

[ə'weɪk]

بیدار



❖ When you are awake, you are not asleep.

➤ Sometimes I lay awake in bed because I am not tired.

➤ گاهی اوقات من در تختخواب بیدار می‌مانم زیرا خسته نیستم.

n.

courage

['kʌrɪdʒ]

شجاعت



❖ When you have courage, you are not afraid.

➤ The man had the courage to touch the lion.

➤ آن مرد شجاعت لمس کردن شیر را داشت.

v.

float

[fləʊt]

شناور بودن



❖ To float is to move on top of water without sinking.

➤ The boy's toy boat floated in the pool.

➤ قایق اسباب بازی پسر در استخر شناور شد.

v.

grant

[grænt]

دادن، بخشیدن، اعطا کردن

- ❖ To grant something is to allow someone to have it.
- The teacher granted us a break after studying hard all day.
- معلم پس از مطالعه سخت در تمام روز به ما استراحت داد.

n.

gravity

['grævəti]

جاذبه

- ❖ gravity is the force that makes things fall to Earth.
- There is no gravity in space.

➤ در فضا جاذبه وجود ندارد.

n.

jewel

['dʒu:əl]

جواهرات

- ❖ A jewel is a beautiful stone that is worth a lot of money.
- A diamond is one of the most expensive jewels in the world.
- الماس یکی از گرانبهاترین جواهرات در جهان است.

n.

miner

['maɪnər]

معدنچی

- ❖ A miner is a person who works in a mine.
- The miner was looking for gold.

➤ معدنچی در جستجوی طلا بود.



n.

mineral

['mɪnərəl]

مواد معدنی

❖ A mineral is a type of substance found in the Earth.

➤ Rocks are made up of different kinds of minerals.

➤ صخره‌ها از انواع مختلفی از مواد معدنی ساخته شده‌اند.



v.

participate

[pɑːr'tɪsɪpeɪt]

شرکت کردن، مشارکت کردن

❖ To participate is to take part in something.

➤ The students participated in the school play.

➤ دانش آموزان در بازی مدرسه شرکت کردند.



n.

permission

[pə'r'mɪʃn]

اجازه

❖ permission means the act of allowing the doing of something.

➤ I have permission to drive my mom's car.

➤ من اجازه دارم با ماشین مادرم رانندگی کنم.



v.

pour

[pɔːr]

ریختن

❖ To pour a liquid means to make it come out of a container.

➤ I poured some milk into my sister's cup.

➤ من مقداری شیر داخل فنجان خواهرم ریختم.

n.

presence

['prezns]

وجود، حضور

❖ Someone or something's presence is the fact they are there.

➤ The presence of dark clouds meant it would rain.

➤ وجود ابرهای تیره به این معنا بود که باران خواهد بارید.



adj.

raw

[rɔ:]

ناخالص، تصفیه نشده، خام

❖ If a material is raw, it is natural and has not been processed.

➤ The company dumped raw sewage into the river.

➤ این شرکت فاضلاب ناخالص را به درون رودخانه ریخت.



n.

satellite

['sætəlaɪt]

ماهواره

❖ A satellite is something that is sent into space to get information.

➤ The satellite was traveling around the earth.

➤ ماهواره در حال گردش به دور زمین بود.



n.

scale

[skeɪl]

مقیاس، اندازه

❖ The scale of something is its size, especially when it is very large.

➤ I was surprised by the scale of the buildings in the downtown area.

➤ من از اندازه ساختمان‌ها در منطقه مرکز شهر تعجب کردم.



v.

skip

[skip]

ترک کردن، صرف نظر کردن

❖ To skip something is to not do it.

➤ He skipped work to get more sleep.

➤ او برای خواب بیشتر کار را ترک کرد.

v.

stretch

[stretʃ]

کشیدن، کش آوردن

❖ To stretch is to make your arms or legs reach out.

➤ She stretched her body before exercising.

➤ قبل از تمرین بدن خود را کشید (حرکات کششی انجام داد).

n.

telescope

['teliskəʊp]

تلسکوپ

❖ A telescope is a tool people use to look at the stars.

➤ With a telescope, you can see the moon and stars easily.

➤ با یک تلسکوپ می‌توانید ماه و ستاره‌ها را به راحتی مشاهده کنید.

adv.

underground

[ˌʌndə'graʊnd]

زیر زمین

❖ When something is underground, it is below the surface of the Earth.

➤ Subway trains travel underground.

➤ قطارهای (واگن) مترو زیر زمین حرکت می‌کنند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. permission
 - a. to not be scared
 - b. the act of allowing the doing of something
 - c. to not be asleep
 - d. something sent into space
2. scale
 - a. size
 - b. below the earth
 - c. a chemical
 - d. an expensive stone
3. courage
 - a. to be alert
 - b. the act of allowing the doing of something
 - c. to take part in an activity
 - d. bravery
4. satellite
 - a. to not do something
 - b. something sent into space
 - c. to take part in an activity
 - d. the act of allowing the doing of something
5. pour
 - a. a chemical in the earth
 - b. a tool for looking
 - c. to move liquid
 - d. to be afraid
6. raw
 - a. a tool for looking
 - b. natural
 - c. a man in space
 - d. something in a place
7. telescope
 - a. a tube for water
 - b. a spirit
 - c. a tool for looking
 - d. a man in space
8. awake
 - a. to not do something
 - b. not asleep
 - c. not afraid
 - d. the act of allowing the doing of something
9. gravity
 - a. a chart of numbers
 - b. a spirit
 - c. to move on top of water
 - d. a powerful force
10. presence
 - a. a man in space
 - b. a worker in a mine
 - c. a spirit
 - d. the fact of being present

Exercise 2

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. **angels / astronauts**

The movie had _____ flying in heaven and singing beautiful songs.
I watched a TV show about how people trained to become _____.

2. **participate / satellite**

Russia was the first country to send a _____ into space.
The teacher asked all of us to _____ in writing the story.

3. **grants / permission**

My mother gave me _____ to attend the party.
The man at the door _____ people permission to enter the building.

4. **jewels / minerals**

We are studying _____ that we use in everyday life.
The woman keeps her _____ in a safe place.

5. **telescope / pipe**

The water _____ broke, and now the street is flooded.
Thomas got a _____ from his grandfather on his birthday.

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

jewel participate permission underground awake

One day I saw an ad in the newspaper. It was for a treasure hunt in some
1 _____ caves. I really wanted to 2 _____, but I had to
get my parents' 3 _____. They said I could do it. The night before the
hunt, I was 4 _____ all night long. I kept wondering what we'd be
looking for. Maybe it would be a big 5 _____ or gold. When I got to
the hunt, there were a lot of other kids there. We were given maps. Each map led
to a different place. My treasure turned out to be a book called *Treasure Island*. I
was a little disappointed. But I had fun looking for it!

From the Earth to the Stars

Jeremy was from a family of **miners**. Like them, he worked **underground** during the day. His job was to gather **raw minerals** and **jewels**. Each night after work, he lay **awake** in an open field. With his **telescope**, he looked at the stars. He was amazed by the **scale** of space. He wished someday he might travel there.

One day there was an accident in the mine. Water **poured** into the mine. Everything was dark. Jeremy **stretched** out and grabbed a piece of wood. It kept him from sinking. Jeremy felt a **presence** nearby.

“I am an angel,” said a voice.

“What?” Jeremy exclaimed.

“You must never come underground again. Have the **courage** to make your wishes come true.”

For a long time he **floated** in silence. Then he heard other voices. The other miners were coming to rescue him.

The next day Jeremy **skipped** work. He decided to become an **astronaut**. For the next two years, he studied hard. One day, he was given **permission** to **participate** in a mission to space. His wish had been **granted**.

His spaceship left the ground. It went higher until there was no more **gravity**. He saw **satellites** floating next to the ship.

Then Jeremy saw a beautiful angel outside his spaceship. It smiled at Jeremy. For some minutes, Jeremy could not speak. Finally, he said, “Thank you.”



از زمین تا ستاره ها

جرمی از یک خانواده معدنچی بود. مثل آنها، در طول روز زیر زمین کار می‌کرد. کار او این بود که مواد معدنی خالص و جواهرات را جمع کند. هر شب بعد از کار کردن بیدار در یک فضای باز دراز می‌کشید. با تلسکوپش به ستاره‌ها نگاه می‌کرد. از مقیاس فضایی حیرت زده بود. آرزو می‌کرد که ای کاش روزی به آنجا سفر کند. یک روز در معدن حادثه‌ای رخ داد. آب به داخل معدن جاری شده بود. همه چیز تاریک بود. جرمی خود را به بیرون کشید و یک تکه چوب گرفت. او را از غرق شدن باز می‌داشت. جرمی در آن نزدیکی حضوری را احساس کرد.

صدایی گفت: "من یک فرشته هستم،"

جرمی با تعجب فریاد زد: "چی؟"

شما هرگز نباید دوباره به زیر زمین بروید. شجاعت داشته باشید که آرزوهای خود را به واقعیت تبدیل کنید.

برای مدتی طولانی در سکوت غرق شد. سپس صداهای دیگر را شنید. معدنچیان دیگر برای نجات او می‌آمدند.

روز بعد جرمی کارش را ترک کرد. او تصمیم گرفت که یک فضانورد شود. او در دو سال آینده سخت مطالعه کرد. یک روز، به او اجازه داده شد تا در ماموریتی به فضا شرکت کند. آرزوی او برآورده شده بود. سفینه فضایی او زمین را ترک کرد. آن قدر بالا رفت تا اینکه دیگر جاذبه‌ای وجود نداشت. او ماهواره‌های شناور را در کنار سفینه دید.

سپس جرمی یک فرشته زیبا را در بیرون سفینه فضایی خود دید. به جرمی لبخند زد. تا چند دقیقه، جرمی نمی‌توانست حرف بزند. سرانجام او گفت: "سپاسگزارم."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why satellites are useful
 - b. How a man escaped gravity
 - c. Why a telescope is a useful thing
 - d. How a miner became an astronaut
2. Why did Jeremy stop going underground?
 - a. It kept him awake all night long.
 - b. He could not find any jewels or minerals.
 - c. An angel told him to stop working there and make his dreams come true.
 - d. He stopped having the courage to skip work.
3. In the second paragraph, we can infer that Jeremy _____.
 - a. did not know how to float
 - b. could not see the angel
 - c. broke the pipe by accident
 - d. felt the presence of the workers
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. Jeremy was granted permission to leave the mine
 - b. Jeremy used a telescope to watch the stars
 - c. Jeremy stretched out to grab the wood
 - d. Jeremy was amazed by the scale of space
5. What did Jeremy participate in after finishing astronaut school?



لیست کلمات درس 22

- alarm (n.)
- apart (adv.)
- arrest (v.)
- award (n.)
- breed (n.)
- bucket (n.)
- contest (n.)
- convict (v.)
- garage (n.)
- journalist (n.)
- pup (n.)
- qualify (v.)
- repair (v.)
- resume (v.)
- rob (v.)
- slip (v.)
- somewhat (adv.)
- stable (adj.)
- tissue (n.)
- yard (n.)



n.

alarm

[ə'la:rm]

هشدار، اعلان خطر، زنگ خطر

- ❖ An alarm is something that warns people of danger.
- When the students heard the fire alarm, they left the building.
- هنگامی که دانش آموزان صدای آژیر آتش را شنیدند، ساختمان را ترک کردند.

adv.

apart

[ə'pɑ:rt]

جدا

- ❖ When people or things are apart, they are not close together.
- The couple decided to live apart from each other.
- آن زوج تصمیم گرفتند که جدا از هم زندگی کنند.



v.

arrest

[ə'rest]

دستگیرکردن/شدن

- ❖ To arrest someone means to catch them for doing something bad.
- The man was arrested for breaking the law.
- مرد به دلیل قانون شکنی دستگیر شد.



n.

award

[ə'wɔ:rd]

جایزه

- ❖ An award is a prize someone gets for doing something well.
- He got an award for having the best grades in class.
- او به خاطر گرفتن بهترین نمرات در کلاس جایزه گرفت.





n.

breed

[bri:d]

نژاد

- ❖ A breed is a group of animals within a species.
- I like small dog breeds, such as terriers.

➤ من نژاد سگ‌های کوچک را دوست دارم، مثلاً تریرها.



n.

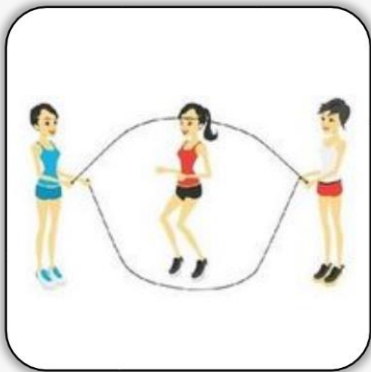
bucket

['bʌkɪt]

سطل

- ❖ A bucket is a round container to put things in.
- I filled the bucket with water.

➤ من سطل را با آب پر کردم.



n.

contest

['kɑ:ntest]

مسابقه

- ❖ A contest is a game or a race.
- The girls had a contest to see who could jump higher. To challenge.
- دختران مسابقه‌ای داشتند که ببینند چه کسی می‌تواند از همه بالاتر بپرد. برای به چالش کشیدن.



v.

convict

[kən'vɪkt]

محکوم شدن

- ❖ To convict someone means to prove that they did a bad thing.
- He was convicted of the crime and sent to jail.

➤ او به جرم محکوم شد و به زندان فرستاده شد.

n.

garage

[gə'ra:ʒ]

گاراژ، پارکینگ



- ❖ A garage is the part of a house where people put their cars.
- My car does not get dirty because I keep it in the garage.
- ماشین من کثیف نمی‌شود زیرا من آن را در گاراژ نگه میدارم.

n.

journalist

['dʒɜ:nəlist]

روزنامه نگار



- ❖ A journalist is a person who writes news stories.
- The journalist took notes for a story he was writing.
- روزنامه نگار برای داستانی که در حال نوشتنش بود یادداشت برداری کرد.

n.

pup

[pʌp]

توله سگ



- ❖ A pup is a young dog.
- All the girl wanted for her birthday was a pup.
- تمام آنچه‌ی که دختر برای تولدش می‌خواست یک توله سگ بود.

v.

qualify

['kwɑ:lɪfaɪ]

صلاحیت داشتن، واجد شرایط بودن



- ❖ To qualify is to get, or to be declared, adequate or good enough.
- He qualified to go to the final match by beating the opponent.
- او برای رفتن به مسابقه پایانی با شکست دادن حریف واجد شرایط شد.



v.

repair

[ri'per]

تعمیر کردن



❖ To repair something is to fix it.

➤ I repaired the flat tire on my car.

➤ من لاستیک پنچر ماشینم را تعمیر کردم.

v.

resume

[ri'zu:m]

ادامه دادن، از سرگیری



❖ To resume something means to start it again after taking a break.

➤ I put the newspaper down to eat breakfast. Then I resumed reading.

➤ من برای خوردن صبحانه روزنامه را پایین گذاشتم. سپس خواندن را ادامه دادم.

v.

rob

[rɑ:b]

ربودن، دزدیدن



❖ To rob a person or place is to take their property by using force.

➤ A thief has robbed me of my passport.

➤ یک دزد گذرنامه من را ربود.

v.

slip

[slip]

لغزیدن، لیز خوردن، سر خوردن



❖ To slip means to slide and fall down.

➤ The man slipped on the wet floor.

➤ مرد روی زمین خیس لیز خورد.

adv.

somewhat

['sʌmwaɪt]

تا حدی، قدری

- ❖ somewhat means to some degree, but not to a large degree.
- James was somewhat upset when he had to move some boxes.
- جیمز تا حدی ناراحت شد هنگامی که مجبور شد تعدادی جعبه را جابه جا کند.



adj.

stable

['steɪbl]

مستحکم، مقاوم

- ❖ When something is stable, it will not fall over.
- The chair is stable. Its legs are strong.
- صندلی مستحکم است. پایه هایش مقاوم است.



n.

tissue

['tɪʃu:]

دستمال

- ❖ A tissue is a soft piece of paper people use to wipe their noses.
- There was a box of tissue on the table.
- یک بسته دستمال کاغذی روی میز بود.



n.

yard

[jɑ:rd]

حیاط

- ❖ A yard is the ground just outside of a person's house.
- The girls jumped rope in the yard.
- دخترها در حیاط طناب بازی می‌کردند.



Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. repair
 - a. to fix
 - b. to start after a break
 - c. to slide and fall
 - d. to catch a bad person
2. tissue
 - a. a soft paper
 - b. a machine that blows air
 - c. a news writer
 - d. a container with wheels
3. pup
 - a. a place for a car
 - b. a prize
 - c. a baby dog
 - d. a game or race
4. resume
 - a. to slide and fall
 - b. to start after a break
 - c. to prove
 - d. to fix
5. stable
 - a. a little bit
 - b. a place for a car
 - c. type of animal
 - d. will not fall

Part B Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. a place to put a car
 - a. stable
 - b. bucket
 - c. alarm
 - d. garage
2. to prove someone did a bad thing
 - a. somewhat
 - b. repair
 - c. convict
 - d. resume
3. not close together
 - a. apart
 - b. arrest
 - c. slip
 - d. qualify
4. a type of animal
 - a. tissue
 - b. breed
 - c. yard
 - d. contest
5. a news writer
 - a. pup
 - b. journalist
 - c. award
 - d. qualify

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. Be careful not to **slip** on the ice.
___ b. I hope my **yard** is ready to eat.
2. ___ a. I made a cake with my **stable**.
___ b. The man **robbed** the store of over 200 dollars.
3. ___ a. The boy carried sand in his **bucket**.
___ b. He used the **contest** to clean the floor.
4. ___ a. The **award** for winning the game is a new toy.
___ b. The boy pulled the car **apart** by washing it.
5. ___ a. The mother **arrested** dinner for her family.
___ b. An **alarm** sounds to warn us of a fire.
6. ___ a. The **stable** tree did not fall in the wind.
___ b. She **slipped** the table after dinner.
7. ___ a. My dog likes to play in the **yard**.
___ b. The man was upset after he **robbed** himself.
8. ___ a. I fell down and got hurt as an **award**.
___ b. I won the **contest** because I was the fastest runner.
9. ___ a. China and Mexico are far **apart**.
___ b. The **alarm** washed away the dirt.
10. ___ a. The **bucket** wrote down every word.
___ b. If you steal, the police will **arrest** you.

The Farm Festival

Once there was a farm. Many animals lived there. One day, they had a **contest** in the **yard**. They were going to race from the barn to the farmer's **garage**. The barn and the garage were far **apart**. It would be a long race. The winner **qualified** to win a bag full of apples as an **award**.

But the race did not start well. The cart with all the apples was not **stable**, and the animals had to **repair** it. Then the **pup** knocked over the apples. The pig yelled, "We are going to **slip**! We must clean up this mess." The pup felt bad, and she began to cry. The dog gave her a **tissue** to wipe her tears.

Then the race **resumed**. But the duck tried to **rob** them and take all the apples. The cat said, "I will have you **arrested**!" The duck said, "You can't **convict** me! You can't prove I took it." The race stopped yet again.

The animals tried to race one more time. Then they heard an **alarm** coming from the barn. There was a fire! They got **buckets** of water to put out the fire. A **journalist** came to write a story about the festival and the race. The horse told her, "I am a special **breed** of horse. I would have won the race easily." The pig said, "It was **somewhat** hard to have the race. But we had fun. That is what's important!"



جشنواره‌ی مزرعه

روزگاری مزرعه‌ای وجود داشت. حیوانات زیادی آنجا زندگی می‌کردند. روزی مسابقه‌ای در حیاط برگزار کردند. آنها قصد داشتند از طویله تا گاراژ کشاورز مسابقه دهند. طویله و گاراژ دور از هم بودند. مسابقه‌ای طولانی می‌شد. برنده شایسته‌ی بردن یک کیسه پر از سیب به عنوان جایزه بود.

اما مسابقه به خوبی شروع نشد. گاری با تمام سیب‌ها مقاوم نبود و حیوانات مجبور بودند آن را تعمیر کنند. سپس توله سگ به زیر سیب‌ها ضربه زد. خوک فریاد زد: " ما داریم سر می‌خوریم! باید این آشفتگی را تمام کنی." توله سگ احساس بدی داشت و شروع به گریه کرد. سگ به او دستمال کاغذی داد تا اشک‌هایش را پاک کند.

سپس مسابقه شروع شد. اما اردک سعی کرد از آنها دزدی کند و همه‌ی سیب‌ها را بگیرد. گربه گفت: " من تو را دستگیر خواهم کرد! اردک گفت: " تو نمی‌توانی مرا محکوم کنی! شما نمی‌توانید ثابت کنید که من آنها را برداشتم." مسابقه دوباره متوقف شده بود.

حیوانات یکبار دیگر تلاش به برگزاری مسابقه کردند. سپس آنها صدای آژیری که از طویله می‌آمد را شنیدند. آتش سوزی شده بود! آنها سطل‌های آب را آوردند و آتش را خاموش کردند. یک روزنامه نگار برای نوشتن داستانی در مورد این جشنواره و مسابقه آمده بود. اسب به او گفت: " من نژاد خاصی از اسب هستم. من به راحتی در مسابقه پیروز می‌شدم." خوک گفت: " قدری برگزاری مسابقه سخت بود. ولی به ما خوش گذشت. این چیزی است که مهم است!"

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why contests have awards
 - b. How a special breed of racehorse would've won the race
 - c. Why animals have to repair things on a farm
 - d. How animals had trouble during a race
2. When the cart with the apples fell over, why did the animals stop running?
 - a. Because they did not want to slip on the apples
 - b. Because they had to find tissue
 - c. Because they did not want to resume the race
 - d. Because the yard was far apart
3. What did the duck do wrong?
 - a. He was arrested and convicted of stealing a bag of money.
 - b. He stole the bucket.
 - c. He tried to steal the award.
 - d. He set the garage on fire.
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the alarm sounded when there was a fire
 - b. the animals were somewhat angry
 - c. the cart was not stable
 - d. a journalist wrote about the festival
5. How far was the race going to be?



لیست کلمات درس 23

- alike (adj.)
- annoy (v.)
- architecture (n.)
- artificial (adj.)
- chain (n.)
- distinct (adj.)
- distinguish (v.)
- dust (n.)
- excitement (n.)
- heal (v.)
- inherit (v.)
- manner (n.)
- mount (v.)
- roof (n.)
- shortage (n.)
- solid (adj.)
- stock (n.)
- substance (n.)
- tomb (n.)
- wound (n.)



adj.

alike

[ə'laɪk]

شبيه بهم

❖ If two things or people are alike, they are similar in some way.

➤ People often think my sister and I look alike.

➤ مردم اغلب فکر می‌کنند که من و خواهرم شبیه هم هستیم.



v.

annoy

[ə'noɪ]

اذیت کردن، آزار رساندن

❖ To annoy someone means to bother them.

➤ The flies buzzing around John's head annoyed him very much.

➤ مگس‌هایی که دور سر جان وز وز می‌کردند، او را بسیار اذیت کردند.



n.

architecture

['ɑ:rkɪtektʃər]

معماری

❖ architecture is the style or way a building is made.

➤ The architecture of the church is amazing.

➤ معماری کلیسا شگفت‌انگیز است.



adj.

artificial

[,ɑ:rtɪ'fɪʃl]

مصنوعی

❖ If something is artificial, it is made to look like something natural.

➤ That soccer field has artificial grass, but it looks real.

➤ آن زمین فوتبال چمن مصنوعی دارد، اما واقعی بنظر می‌رسد.

n.

chain

[tʃeɪn]

زنجیر



- ❖ A chain is a series of connected loops often used to keep things in place.
- The scary dog was secured with a chain.

➤ آن سگ ترسناک با زنجیر بی خطر شده است.

adj.

distinct

[dɪ'stɪŋkt]

متمايز، متفاوت



- ❖ If something is distinct, it is easily noticed or different from other things.
- That girl has distinct pink hair.

➤ آن دختر موهای صورتی متمایزی دارد.

v.

distinguish

[dɪ'stɪŋɡwɪʃ]

تشخیص دادن، تمیز دادن



- ❖ To distinguish is to recognize differences between things.
- The twins look exactly the same. It is hard to distinguish between them.

➤ دوقلوها دقیقاً یکسان به نظر می‌رسند. تشخیص آنها کار سختی است.

n.

dust

[dʌst]

گرد و خاک، غبار



- ❖ dust is very tiny pieces of dirt or other matter.

- In the old house, the dust was thick on the floor and chairs.

➤ در خانه قدیمی غبار روی زمین و صندلی‌ها قطور بود.

n.

excitement [ɪk'saɪtmənt]

هیجان



❖ excitement means to feel a lot of happiness about something.

➤ Did you see the excitement in her when the team scored?

➤ آیا وقتی تیم امتیاز گرفت، هیجان را در او دیدید؟

v.

heal [hi:l]

بهبود یافتن



❖ To heal means to make a part of the body healthy again after injury.

➤ After my broken arm heals, I can play baseball again.

➤ بعد از بهبودی بازوی شکسته‌ام، می‌توانم دوباره بیس بال بازی کنم.

v.

inherit [ɪn'herɪt]

به ارث بردن



❖ To inherit it to get something from someone who has died.

➤ She inherited her mother's gold earrings.

➤ او گوشواره‌های طلای مادرش را به ارث برد.

n.

manner ['mænər]

شیوه، روش، رفتار



❖ A manner is the way someone does something.

➤ His manner of not looking at someone while speaking, is a bit rude.

➤ این طرز رفتارش که به شخصی که صحبت می‌کند نگاه نمی‌کند کمی بی ادبانه است.

v.

mount

[maʊnt]

بالا رفتن، زیاد شدن



- ❖ Something mounts when it becomes stronger over time.
- His fear mounted as the monster crawled out from under his bed.
- ترسش هنگامی که هیولا از زیر تختش بیرون خزید، زیاد شد.

n.

roof

[ru:f]

سقف، بام



- ❖ A roof is the outside top part of a building.
- The roof was covered with snow.
- سقف پوشیده از برف بود.

n.

shortage

['ʃɔ:rtɪdʒ]

کمبود



- ❖ A shortage is a lack of something you need or want.
- Since there was a shortage of food, people were hungry.
- از آنجا که کمبود غذا وجود داشت، مردم گرسنه بودند.

adj.

solid

['sɑ:lɪd]

محکم، سفت، جامد



- ❖ If something is solid, it is made of firm material.
- The safe looked to be quite solid.

➤ گاوصندوق بسیار محکم به نظر می‌رسید.

n.

stock

[sta:k]

ذخیره، موجودی



- ❖ A stock is a stored amount of something.
- They keep a stock of rice so they'll always have something to eat.
- آنها ذخیره‌ی برنج نگهداری می‌کنند، بنابراین همیشه چیزی برای خوردن دارند.

n.

substance

['sʌbstəns]

ماده



- ❖ A substance is any specific material or mixture of materials.
- Water is an important substance for all living things.
- آب ماده مهمی برای همه‌ی موجودات زنده است.

n.

tomb

[tu:m]

مقبره، آرامگاه



- ❖ A tomb is a grave where a dead person is buried.
- Their whole family is buried inside the tomb.
- تمام خانواده‌ی آنها در داخل مقبره دفن شده‌اند.

n.

wound

[wu:nd]

زخم، جراحت



- ❖ A wound is an injury to the body.
- He had many wounds after the car accident.
- او پس از تصادف رانندگی زخم‌های زیادی داشت.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. architecture / substance

The airport's _____ consisted of large curved windows and wide hallways.

If you mix water and flour, you will create a sticky _____.

2. alike / artificial

Because they had plastic leaves, the flowers were clearly _____.

Though they were made in different years, those cars look _____.

3. shortage / stock

They need a large _____ of wood to burn in the winter.

The water _____ left several areas with nothing to drink.

4. distinct / distinguish

The _____ smell of fresh cookies came from our house.

I couldn't _____ which of the black bags was mine.

5. roof / tomb

The cat slowly walked across the steep _____.

They laid the body inside the cold dark _____.

Part B Choose the right word for the given definition.

1. the top of a building

- a. dust b. roof c. tomb d. chain

2. an injury to the body

- a. substance b. distinct c. wound d. artificial

3. a feeling of happiness

- a. excitement b. inherit c. manner d. architecture

4. a stored amount

- a. shortage b. manner c. alike d. stock

5. someone who steals

- a. annoy b. excitement c. mount d. thief

Exercise 2

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The lawyer said that Jane would be given her uncle's house after he died.
inhe _____
2. The police thought my brother was a person who steals.
thi _____
3. The wind blew the tiny pieces of dirt along the street.
d _____
4. Tom used a series of connected loops to pull his truck.
ch _____
5. The bandages helped the cut on his arm to become well after injury.
h _____
6. The fall left a painful injury to my left leg.
wo _____
7. Their excitement continued to grow stronger as they talked about the vacation.
m _____
8. My sister likes to bother me when I'm sleeping.
a _____
9. His head is so hard. It feels like it's made out of firm steel.
s _____
10. She explained the homework in a calm way.
m _____

The Clever Thief

A new king **inherited** a lot of gold. He loved his gold very much. He even wanted to keep it after he died. Therefore, he had a large **tomb** built for himself and his riches.

However, the tomb's builder had a plan. Most of the stones were **solid**, but he put one special stone on the **roof**. It was made of a lighter **substance**.

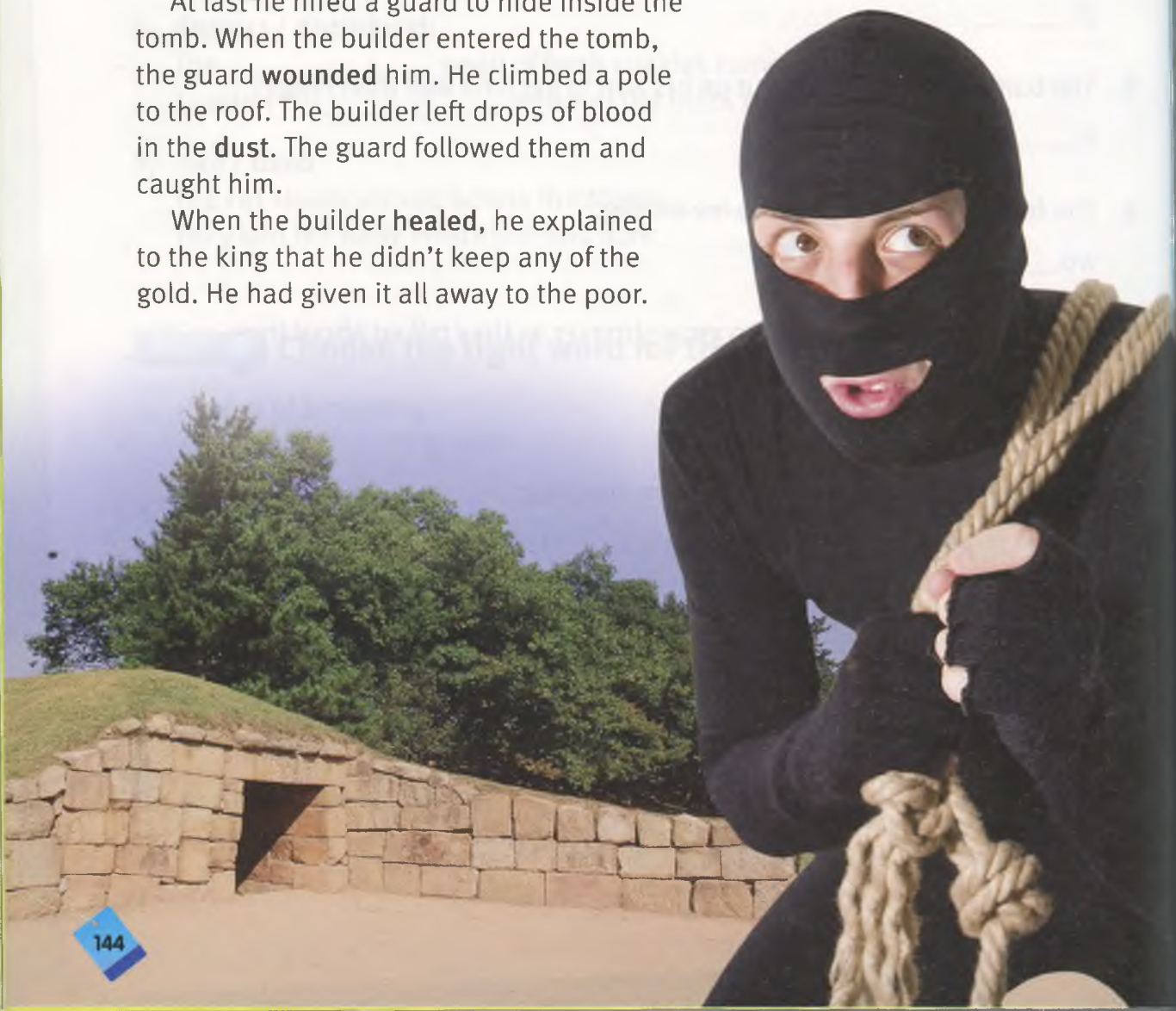
When the tomb was done, the king moved in his **stock** of gold. One night, the builder went to the tomb. His **excitement mounted**. Because all the stones looked **alike**, he had left a **distinct** mark on the **artificial** block. The mark helped him **distinguish** the difference in the **architecture**.

The builder lifted the stone. Using a **chain**, he climbed into the tomb. He filled his pockets with gold.

The builder followed this **manner** night after night. Soon, the king noticed a **shortage** in his gold. This **annoyed** the king.

At last he hired a guard to hide inside the tomb. When the builder entered the tomb, the guard **wounded** him. He climbed a pole to the roof. The builder left drops of blood in the **dust**. The guard followed them and caught him.

When the builder **healed**, he explained to the king that he didn't keep any of the gold. He had given it all away to the poor.



دزد باهوش

یه شاه جدید مقدار زیادی طلا به ارث برده بود. او طلاهایش را خیلی دوست داشت. حتی می‌خواست بعد از مرگش از آنها نگهداری کند. از این رو، مجبور شد یک قبر بزرگ برای خود و ثروتش بسازد.

به هر حال، سازنده‌ی قبر یک نقشه داشت. بیشتر سنگ‌ها محکم بودند، اما او یک سنگ خاص روی بام گذاشته بود. آن از یک ماده سبک تر ساخته شده بود. وقتی مقبره ساخته شد، پادشاه ذخایر طلاهایش را جابجا کرد. یک شب، سازنده به مقبره رفت. هیچ‌کس زیاد نبود. به خاطر این که همه سنگ‌ها شبیه هم بودند، علامت مشخصی روی بلوک مصنوعی گذاشته بود. علامت به او کمک کرد تفاوت در معماری را تشخیص دهد.

سازنده سنگ را بلند کرد. با استفاده از زنجیر به داخل مقبره رفت. جیب‌هایش را با طلا پر کرد.

شب‌های متمادی، سازنده، این شیوه را دنبال کرد. به زودی پادشاه متوجه کمبود طلاهایش شد. این موضوع شاه را اذیت کرد. سرانجام یک نگهبان استخدام کرد که در مقبره پنهان شود. وقتی که سازنده وارد مقبره شد، نگهبان او را زخمی کرد. او از یک ستون به سقف رفت. سازنده قطره‌های خونس را در گرد و خاک باقی گذاشت. نگهبان آنها را دنبال کرد و او را گرفت.

وقتی سازنده بهبود یافت، به پادشاه توضیح داد که هیچ کدام از طلاها را نگه نداشته است. همه را به فقرا داده بود.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. The manner in which a king inherited his riches
 - b. Different kinds of architecture
 - c. How a builder tricked a king
 - d. Why a tomb had a large pole
2. What distinguished the artificial block from the real blocks?
 - a. A distinct mark on one of the blocks
 - b. The different color of its substance
 - c. The amount of dust on it
 - d. The solid gold pieces in it
3. How did the king know his gold was missing?
 - a. He found a chain in the tomb.
 - b. There was a hole in the roof.
 - c. There was a shortage of guards.
 - d. His stock of gold had decreased.
4. The builder was caught because _____.
 - a. he and another man looked alike
 - b. he mounted the wrong tomb
 - c. a guard wounded him
 - d. he stopped to heal the king's wound
5. Why was the king annoyed?



لیست کلمات درس 24

- bath (n.)
- bend (v.)
- chew (v.)
- disabled (adj.)
- fantastic (adj.)
- fiction (n.)
- flag (n.)
- inspect (v.)
- journal (n.)
- liquid (n.)
- marvel (v.)
- nutrient (n.)
- overcome (v.)
- recall (v.)
- regret (v.)
- soul (n.)
- sufficient (adj.)
- surgery (n.)
- tough (adj.)
- tube (n.)

n.

bath

[bæθ]

استحمام، حمام

❖ A bath is water in a tub. People take a bath to get clean.

➤ After playing in the dirt, the boy took a bath.

➤ پسر پس از بازی در خاک (کثیفی)، حمام کرد.

v.

bend

[bend]

خم شدن

❖ To bend is to move something so it is not straight.

➤ Lee bend(d)t over and picked up the paper on the ground.

➤ لی خم شد و برگه را از روی زمین برداشت.

v.

chew

[tʃu:]

جویدن

❖ To chew is to move your mouth to break up food.

➤ I always chew my food carefully before swallowing it.

➤ من همیشه قبل از قورت دادن غذا، آن را با دقت می‌جویم.

adj.

disabled

[dis'eɪblɪd]

معلول، ناتوان

❖ When a person is disabled, they cannot do what a normal person can do.

➤ The disabled man used a wheelchair to move around.

➤ مرد معلول از ویلچر برای رفتن به اطراف استفاده کرد.



adj.

fantastic

[fæn'tæstɪk]

خارق العاده، فوق العاده

- ❖ If something is fantastic, it is really good.
- The student did a fantastic job on his project and got an award.
- دانش آموز کار خارق العاده‌ای روی پروژه خود انجام داد و جایزه گرفت.

n.

fiction

['fɪkʃn]

داستان، قصه، افسانه

- ❖ fiction is a story that is not true.
- I enjoy reading works of fiction because they are very entertaining.
- من از خواندن آثار داستانی لذت می‌برم زیرا آنها بسیار سرگرم کننده هستند.

n.

flag

[flæɡ]

پرچم

- ❖ A flag is a piece of colored cloth that represents something.
- Our country has a beautiful flag.
- کشور ما پرچم زیبایی دارد.

v.

inspect

[ɪn'spekt]

بررسی کردن، بازرسی کردن

- ❖ To inspect is to look at something carefully.
- The mechanic inspected our car to see if it had any problems.
- تعمیرکار خودرو ما را بررسی کرد تا ببیند آیا مشکلی دارد.



n.

journal

['dʒɜːrnəl]

مجله، ژورنال

- ❖ A journal is a type of magazine that deals with an academic subject.
- Mi-young was busy working on an article for an art journal.
- می یانگ مشغول کار بر روی مقاله‌ای برای یک مجله هنری بود.

n.

liquid

['lɪkwɪd]

مایع

- ❖ A liquid is a substance that is neither solid nor gas.
- Water is the most important liquid for life.
- آب مهمترین مایع برای زندگی است.

v.

marvel

['mɑːrvl]

شگفت زده شدن، متحیر شدن

- ❖ To marvel at something is to feel surprise and interest in it.
- We marveled at her excellent piano playing.
- ما با نواختن پیانوی عالی او شگفت زده شدیم.

n.

nutrient

['nuːtriənt]

ماده مغذی، مواد غذایی

- ❖ A nutrient is something that a living thing needs to keep it alive.
- Vegetables are full of important nutrients.
- سبزیجات مملو از مواد مغذی مهم است.

v.

overcome

[ˌoʊvərˈkʌm]

غلبه کردن

- ❖ To overcome a problem is to successfully fix it.
- She overcame her shyness and spoke in front of the class.
- او بر خجالتش غلبه کرد و جلوی کلاس صحبت کرد.

v.

recall

[rɪˈkɔ:l]

به یاد آوردن

- ❖ To recall something is to remember it.
- She was trying to recall what she had told her friend.
- او سعی داشت آنچه را که به دوستش گفته بود به یاد بیاورد.

v.

regret

[rɪˈɡret]

پشیمان بودن، متاسف بودن

- ❖ To regret something is to wish that it didn't happen.
- I regret that I was mean to my sister.
- من پشیمانم که با خواهرم بد بودم.

n.

soul

[saʊl]

روح

- ❖ A soul is a person's spirit.
- Some people believe that the soul lives after the body dies.
- برخی مردم معتقدند که روح پس از مرگ بدن زندگی می‌کند.



adj.

sufficient

[sə'fɪʃnt]

کافی، بسنده

- ❖ When something is sufficient, you have enough of it.
- After eating a sufficient amount of food, I left the table.
- بعد از خوردن مقدار کافی غذا، میز را ترک کردم.

n.

surgery

['sɜ:rdʒəri]

عمل جراحی، جراحی



- ❖ surgery is medical treatment when the doctor cuts open your body.
- I needed surgery to repair my leg after the accident.
- برای ترمیم پایم بعد از تصادف به عمل جراحی نیاز داشتم.

adj.

tough

[tʌf]

سخت، دشوار



- ❖ If something is tough, it is difficult.
- The man passed his driving test even though it was very tough.
- امرد آزمون رانندگی خود را اگرچه بسیار سخت بود، گذراند.

n.

tube

[tu:b]

لوله



- ❖ A tube is a pipe through which water or air passes.
- The pile of tubes was going to be put in the ground.
- قرار شد دسته‌ای از لوله‌ها زیر زمین قرار داده شوند.

Exercise 1

Check (✓) the better response for each question.

1. Why do you look so clean?
___ a. I was using a journal. ___ b. I just took a bath.
2. Can you touch your toes?
___ a. I marvel at my abilities. ___ b. No, I can't bend that far.
3. Do you remember the movie we saw together?
___ a. Yes, I recall it was wonderful. ___ b. No, I think it was fiction.
4. What do you think we need for our classroom?
___ a. We should have a flag in the corner.
___ b. Yes, I think it is fantastic.
5. How do you feel about your new car?
___ a. It uses sufficient gas. ___ b. I regret buying it.

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

chew inspected nutrients overcome surgery

Franklin felt pain in his stomach. The doctor 1 _____ him to find the cause. His doctor said Franklin needed to 2 _____ his food more slowly. If he did, he could get all the 3 _____ he needed. It would also help him 4 _____ his pain. If Franklin didn't listen, the doctor would have to perform 5 _____.

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. When you want to learn about history, _____.
 a. you should read an academic journal
 b. you should read fiction
2. In front of a government building, _____.
 a. there is usually a flag b. there are usually baths
3. When people die, _____.
 a. they have to get surgery b. their soul goes to heaven
4. A lot of people eat too quickly. _____.
 a. They hardly chew their food b. They only drink liquids
5. The movie was better than we imagined. _____.
 a. It was sufficient b. It was fantastic
6. This is an important decision. _____.
 a. I feel like I need to bend forward
 b. I don't want to have to regret making a mistake
7. Before you buy a car, _____.
 a. marvel at it b. inspect it carefully
8. After the accident, _____.
 a. Ali was disabled b. Ali had a tube
9. Memorize this address, _____.
 a. then you will feel tough
 b. so you will be able to recall it in the future
10. He climbed the mountain _____.
 a. and overcame his fear of heights
 b. to get more nutrients

The Doctor's Cure

James Fry was a **fantastic** doctor. His **surgeries** helped many **disabled** people **overcome** their injuries. He also wrote for a popular medical **journal**. James was very busy. His son, Steve, rarely saw him.

One day, James was walking and **inspecting** a patient's file. There was water all over the floor. James slipped on the **liquid** and fell. He fell on a broken glass **tube**. He was hurt.

Steve came to visit him in the hospital. James said, "It will be **tough** for me to stay in bed. But I can hardly **bend** my legs."

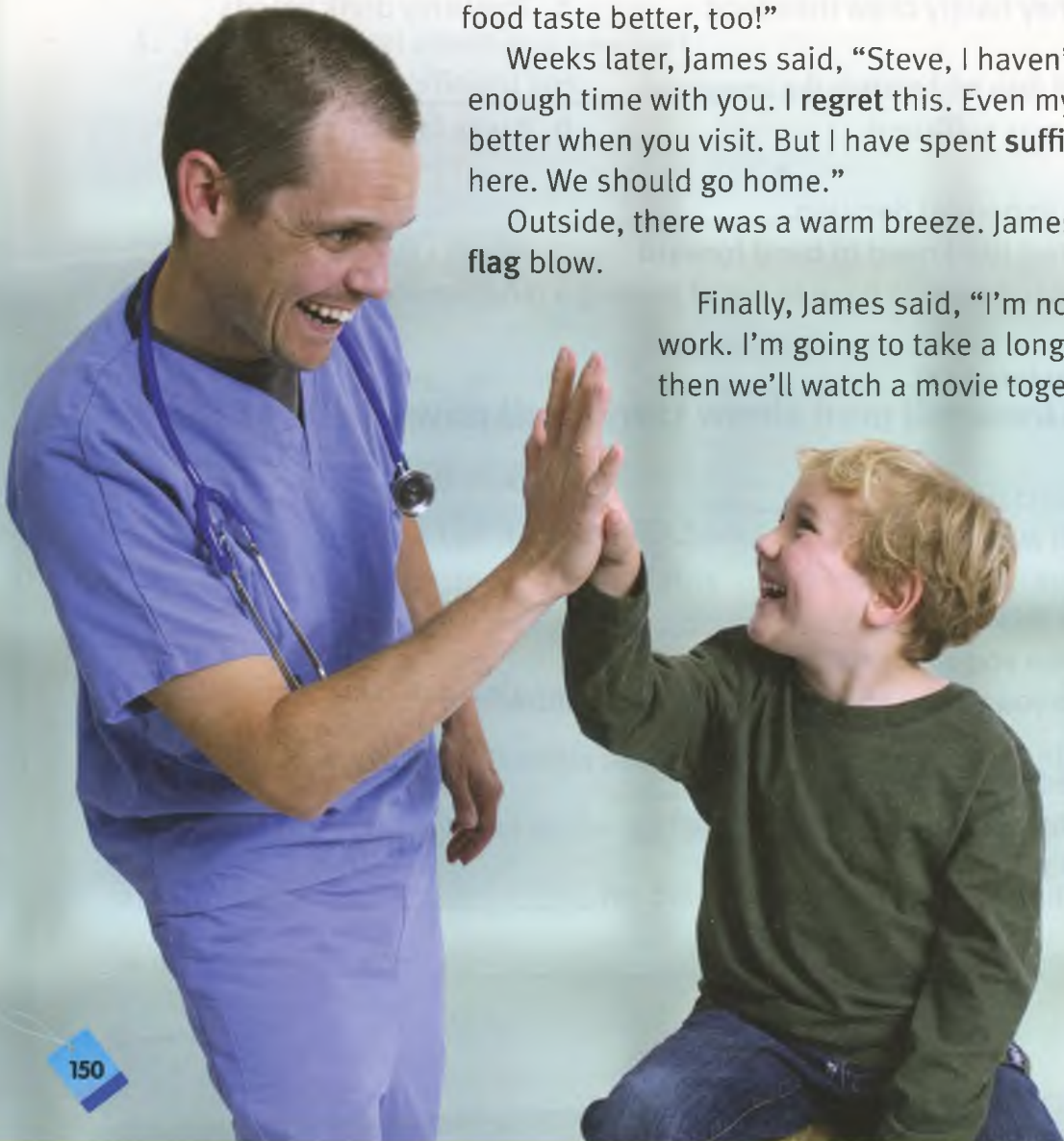
"Then let's watch a movie." Steve said. It made them laugh together. Steve said, "I have to leave, but here's some **fiction** to read."

James started to **recall** fun parts of life. He **marveled** at small things, like food. He was too busy to notice them before. "Steve," he said, "you get more **nutrients** when you **chew** slowly. But I think it makes food taste better, too!"

Weeks later, James said, "Steve, I haven't spent enough time with you. I **regret** this. Even my **soul** feels better when you visit. But I have spent **sufficient** time here. We should go home."

Outside, there was a warm breeze. James watched a **flag** blow.

Finally, James said, "I'm not ready to work. I'm going to take a long **bath**. And then we'll watch a movie together."



معالجهی دکتر

جیمز فرای پزشکی فوق العاده بود. جراحی‌های وی به افراد معلول زیادی کمک کرد تا بر جراحات خود غلبه کنند. همچنین او برای یک مجله پزشکی مشهور می‌نوشت. جیمز خیلی مشغول بود. پسرش، استیو، به ندرت او را می‌دید. یک روز، جیمز داشت قدم می‌زد و پرونده بیماری را بررسی می‌کرد. آب سرتاسر زمین را فرا گرفته بود. جیمز روی مایع لغزید و افتاد. او بر روی یک لوله‌ی شیشه‌ای شکسته افتاد. او آسیب دیده بود.

استیو برای دیدن او به بیمارستان آمد. جیمز گفت: "ماندن در تخت برایم سخت خواهد بود. اما من به سختی می‌توانم پاهایم را خم کنم."

استیو گفت: "پس بیا یک فیلم تماشا کنیم." این باعث شد که آنها با هم بخندند. استیو گفت: "من مجبورم بروم، اما اینجا تعدادی داستان برای خواندن هست."

جیمز شروع به بیاد آوردن بخش‌های جالب زندگی کرد. او از چیزهای کوچکی مانند غذا در شگفت بود. او آنقدر مشغول بود که قبلاً متوجه آنها نشده بود. او گفت: "استیو، وقتی به آرامی غذا را می‌جوی، مواد مغذی بیشتری به دست می‌آوری. اما من فکر می‌کنم که باعث می‌شود که مزه غذا هم بهتر شود."

چند هفته بعد، جیمز گفت: "استیو، من زمان کافی را با تو سپری نکرده‌ام. از این بابت در افسوسم. حتی روح من وقتی که تو به ملاقاتم می‌آیی احساس بهتری دارد. اما من زمان کافی را در اینجا گذرانده‌ام. ما باید به خانه برویم."

بیرون، نسیمی گرم می‌وزید. جیمز تکان پرچمی را تماشا کرد.

سرانجام، جیمز گفت: "من برای کار کردن آماده نیستم. قصد دارم یک حمام طولانی کنم. و بعد یک فیلم را با هم تماشا خواهیم کرد."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. A doctor who needs surgery
 - b. A boy with a fantastic comedy video
 - c. A doctor who recalls fun things
 - d. A disabled boy who overcomes injuries
2. What does James notice now that he isn't busy?
 - a. Food tastes better when you chew it slowly.
 - b. Reading fiction is tough.
 - c. He regrets not working more.
 - d. His soul feels worse than before.
3. How did James get hurt?
 - a. He didn't get enough nutrients.
 - b. He slipped and fell on a broken tube.
 - c. He didn't spend sufficient time at the hospital.
 - d. He slipped on liquid after a bath.
4. What does James do when he leaves the hospital?
 - a. He inspects a patient's file.
 - b. He shows Steve that he can bend his legs.
 - c. He watches a flag blow in the breeze.
 - d. He marvels at the taste of food.

5. What did the movie do to James and Steve?



لیست کلمات درس 25

- admit (v.)
- bin (n.)
- bowl (n.)
- cabin (n.)
- cash (n.)
- criminal (n.)
- dozen (n.)
- elder (n.)
- facial (adj.)
- fence (n.)
- inspire (v.)
- mere (adj.)
- neat (adj.)
- occasion (n.)
- penalty (n.)
- rude (adj.)
- settle (v.)
- vehicle (n.)
- wallet (n.)
- yell (v.)



v.

admit

[əd'mit]

اعتراف کردن، قبول کردن

❖ To admit something means to say that it is true.

➤ I had to admit that I stole his idea.

➤ مجبور بودم اعتراف کنم که ایده او را دزدیدم.



n.

bin

[bɪn]

سطل زباله/آشغال

❖ A bin is a container that holds things.

➤ He put his trash in the bin.

➤ او آشغالش را در سطل زباله گذاشت.



n.

bowl

[boʊl]

کاسه

❖ A bowl is a deep, round dish that holds food or liquid.

➤ I ate a bowl of cereal for breakfast.

➤ من برای صبحانه یک کاسه غلات صبحانه خوردم.



n.

cabin

['kæbɪn]

کلبه‌ی چوبی

❖ A cabin is a small house made of wood.

➤ My grandfather owns a small cabin in the country.

➤ پدربزرگم صاحب کلبه چوبی کوچکی در روستا (حومه شهر) است.



n.

cash

[kæʃ]

پول نقد



❖ cash is money in the form of paper or coins.

➤ I was able to save up enough cash to buy my mother a gift.

➤ من قادر بودم به اندازه‌ی کافی پول نقد برای خریدن هدیه‌ای برای مادرم ذخیره کنم.

n.

criminal

['krɪmɪnl]

جنایتکار، بزهکار، مجرم



❖ A criminal is a person who does something against the law.

➤ The police made sure the criminal couldn't move his hands.

➤ پلیس اطمینان حاصل کرد که جنایتکار نمی‌توانست دستانش را حرکت دهد.

n.

dozen

['dɒzn]

دوجین، دوازده عدد



❖ A dozen is a group of twelve things.

➤ Mom brought home a dozen donuts for us as a treat.

➤ مامان دوازده عدد دونات برای ما به عنوان هدیه به خانه آورد.

n.

elder

['eldə]

بزرگتر، ارشد، مسن‌تر



❖ An elder is a person who is older than the people around them.

➤ Uncle Ray is my elder so I always try to be respectful.

➤ عمو ری بزرگتر من است، بنابراین من همیشه سعی می‌کنم احترام بگذارم.



adj.

facial

['feɪʃl]

مربوط به صورت

- ❖ If something is facial, it is related to a person's face.
- I could tell from his facial features that he was angry.
- می‌توانستم از حالت چهره‌اش بگویم که او عصبانی بود.



n.

fence

[fens]

حصار، فنس، دیوار

- ❖ A fence is a structure around a house or field.
- The farmer put up a fence so that no one could walk on her field.
- کشاورز یک حصار بنا کرد تا کسی نتواند در زمینش قدم بگذارد.



v.

inspire

[ɪn'spaɪər]

برانگیختن/ترغیب شدن به کاری، الهام شدن

- ❖ To inspire means to make person want to do something.
- I was inspired to write a poem after watching the sunrise.
- من ترغیب شدم که بعد از تماشای طلوع آفتاب شعری بنویسم.



adj.

mere

[mɪr]

فقط، تنها

- ❖ When something is mere, it is small or not important.
- We lost the game by a mere two points.

➤ ما بازی را تنها با دو امتیاز باختیم.

adj.

neat

[ni:t]

تمیز، مرتب

- ❖ If something is neat, it is very clean or organized well.
- My sister always keeps her bedroom very neat.
- خواهرم همیشه اتاق خواب خود را بسیار مرتب نگه می‌دارد.



n.

occasion

[ə'keɪʒn]

فرصت، موقعیت مناسب

- ❖ An occasion is a time when something important happens.
- Her graduation was an occasion to have a good time.
- فارغ التحصیلی‌اش فرصت مناسبی برای داشتن اوقاتی خوب بود.



n.

penalty

['penəlti]

جریمه، مجازات

- ❖ A penalty is a punishment, given when someone breaks a rule or law.
- I had to pay a \$ 100 penalty for parking in the wrong spot.
- مجبور شدم 100 دلار جریمه برای پارک کردن در مکانی اشتباه بپردازم.



adj.

rude

[ru:d]

بی ادب، بی تربیت

- ❖ When someone is rude, they are mean and not polite.
- The children at the bus stop were very rude.



➤ بچه‌های داخل ایستگاه اتوبوس بسیار بی‌ادب بودند.

v.

settle

['setl]

حل کردن



- ❖ To settle a problem means to end it by finding a solution.
- It took three of our best executives all day to settle the problem.

➤ سه نفر از بهترین مدیرهای اجرایی مان در طول روز بر روی مسئله کار کردند تا توانستند آن را حل کنند.

n.

vehicle

['vi:əkl]

وسیله نقلیه



- ❖ A vehicle is a thing that moves people or things to another place.
- A ferry is a vehicle that takes people from one island to another.

➤ کشتی وسیله نقلیه‌ای است که مردم را از یک جزیره به جزیره دیگر میبرد.

n.

wallet

['wa:lɪt]

کیف پول، کیف جیبی



- ❖ A wallet is a thing that holds money and fits in a pocket.
- I keep my money in a wallet.

➤ من پولم را در یک کیف پول نگه می‌دارم.

v.

yell

[jel]

فریاد زدن، نعره کشیدن



- ❖ To yell is to say something very loudly.
- The coach yelled at his team for their poor performance.

➤ مربی بر سر تیمش به دلیل عملکرد ضعیفشان فریاد زد.

Exercise 1

Choose the right word for the given definition.

- a group of twelve
a. bin b. neat c. cash d. dozen
- to say loudly
a. yell b. inspire c. admit d. mere
- relating to the face
a. bowl b. facial c. nap d. wallet
- not polite
a. settle b. vehicle c. rude d. occasion
- an older person
a. criminal b. elder c. penalty d. fence

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

mere penalty inspire bowl neat

- I love sports, and I want to _____ children to play sports, too.
- Mia's _____ for not stopping at a red light was \$50.
- After he took a shower and got dressed, my brother looked very _____.
- The cat ate his food out of a black _____.
- He was only given a _____ five dollars for his hard work.

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. My beans **yelled** when I dropped them.
___ b. I keep all of my money in my **wallet**.
2. ___ a. The **rude** boy always said “please” and “thank you.”
___ b. The **fence** around the house needed to be painted.
3. ___ a. The **criminal** was sent to jail.
___ b. I can **admit** to a race because I am fast.
4. ___ a. The man built a **cabin** in the forest.
___ b. The **cash** tasted good tonight.
5. ___ a. The **penalty** for your birthday is a big cake.
___ b. The coach kept the footballs in a large **bin**.
6. ___ a. We were nice to the **rude** man, but he was mean to us.
___ b. The **wallet** made his dinner taste better.
7. ___ a. The strong **fence** let all of the sheep go into the field.
___ b. It was loud at the party, so he had to **yell** for me to hear him.
8. ___ a. When he does something wrong, he always **admits** it.
___ b. The mean **cabin** told the boy to go away.
9. ___ a. If you cheat during the game, there will be a **penalty**.
___ b. **Criminals** are always nice to people.
10. ___ a. She liked to **bin** her toys.
___ b. I do not have enough **cash** to buy a car.

The Criminal

A man had been in jail because he stole things. The **criminal** never felt bad. One day, he escaped and ran into the woods. He found a **cabin** with a **fence**. The cabin was very **neat**. Inside, the criminal found a **bowl** of fruit, a bottle of milk, and a **dozen** eggs. He ate the fruit and drank the milk. But the eggs smelled funny, so he put them in the trash **bin**. Soon, he heard the sound of a **vehicle's** motor.

An old man came in and saw the criminal. The old man **yelled**, "Why are you in my house?" The criminal lied, "I am a policeman." The old man replied, "I am your **elder**. You cannot fool me. You are the criminal." The criminal's **facial** expression became very sad.

He **admitted** that he was a criminal. He said, "I'm sorry. It was **rude** for me to come into your home. Please take the **cash** from my **wallet**. It is a **mere** amount, but it will **settle** our problem." The old man said, "I do not want your money. I just want to **inspire** you to be good. There will be no **penalty** for taking my food."

On this **occasion**, the criminal realized that he had been bad. He listened to the old man and never stole from anyone ever again.



مجرم

مردی به خاطر دزدیدن چیزهایی در زندان بود. مجرم هیچوقت احساس بدی نداشت. یک روز فرار کرد و به جنگل گریخت. یک کلبه چوبی با یک حصار پیدا کرد. کلبه خیلی تمیز بود. در داخل، مجرم یک کاسه میوه، یک بطری شیر و دوجین تخم مرغ پیدا کرد. او میوه را خورد و شیر را نوشید. اما تخم مرغ‌ها بوی مضحکی داشتند، بنابراین آنها را در سطل آشغال ریخت. طولی نکشید صدای موتور وسیله نقلیه را شنید.

پیرمردی آمد و مجرم را دید. پیرمرد فریاد زد: "چرا تو در خانه‌ی من هستی؟ مجرم دروغ گفت: "من مامور پلیس هستم. "پیرمرد جواب داد: "من بزرگتر تو هستم. تو نمی‌توانی مرا گول بزنی. تو مجرم هستی." حالت چهره‌ی مجرم بسیار غمگین شد.

او اعتراف کرد که او یک مجرم است. او گفت: "متاسفم. بی ادبی من بود که وارد خانه‌ی شما شدم. لطفا پول را از کیف پولم بردار. تنها یک مقدار است، اما مشکل ما را حل خواهد کرد."

پیرمرد گفت: "من پول شما را نمی‌خواهم. فقط می‌خواهم تو را به خوب بودن ترغیب کنم. هیچ جریمه‌ای برای گرفتن غذای من وجود ندارد."

در این موقعیت، مجرم به این موضوع پی برد که شخص بدی بوده است. او به حرف پیرمرد گوش داد و هرگز دوباره از کسی دزدی نکرد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why elders are smarter than young people
 - b. How a criminal changed and learned to be good
 - c. Why you should not go to places with fences
 - d. Why you should admit when you are rude

2. Why did the old man yell at the criminal?
 - a. The old man reported the criminal's penalty to the police.
 - b. The old man made an occasion to be bad.
 - c. The old man let the criminal go.
 - d. The old man took the criminal's money.

3. What did the old man do with the criminal at the end of the story?
 - a. The old man reported the criminal's penalty to the police.
 - b. The old man made an occasion to be bad.
 - c. The old man convinced the thief to never steal again.
 - d. The old man took the criminal's money.

4. According to the passage, the criminal did all of the following EXCEPT _____.
 - a. he ate the fruit that was in the bowl
 - b. he drank the milk that was in the bottle
 - c. he heard the motor from the vehicle
 - d. he fell asleep in the cabin

5. What did the old man inspire the criminal to do?



لیست کلمات درس 26

- accuse (v.)
- adjust (v.)
- amuse (v.)
- coral (n.)
- cotton (n.)
- crash (v.)
- deck (n.)
- engage (v.)
- firm (adj.)
- fuel (n.)
- grand (adj.)
- hurricane (n.)
- loss (n.)
- plain (adj.)
- reef (n.)
- shut (v.)
- strict (adj.)
- surf (v.)
- task (n.)
- zone (n.)

v.

accuse

[ə'kju:z]

متهم کردن، تهمت زدن



❖ To accuse someone of something is to blame them for doing it.

➤ She accused her brother of breaking her computer.

➤ او برادرش را متهم کرد که کامپیوترش را خراب کرده است.

v.

adjust

[ə'dʒʌst]

تنظیم کردن، میزان کردن



❖ To adjust something means to change it so it is better.

➤ He adjusted the old guitar to make it sound better.

➤ او گیتار قدیمی را تنظیم کرد تا صدای بهتری بدهد.

v.

amuse

[ə'mju:z]

سرگرم کردن



❖ To amuse someone means to do something that is funny or entertaining.

➤ The singer was very good. She amused the crowd.

➤ خواننده بسیار خوب بود. او جمعیت را سرگرم کرد.

n.

coral

['kɔ:rəl]

مرجان



❖ coral is the hard, colorful material formed by the shells of animals.

➤ The diver admired the beautiful coral under the water.

➤ غواص، مرجان زیبای زیر آب را تحسین کرد.

n.

cotton

['kɑ:tŋ]

پارچه نخی، نخ



- ❖ cotton is a cloth made from the fibers of the cotton plant.
- I like to wear clothes made from cotton in the summer.
- من دوست دارم در تابستان لباس‌هایی که از پارچه نخی تهیه شده است بپوشم.

v.

crash

[kræʃ]

تصادف کردن، برخورد کردن



- ❖ To crash means to hit and break something.
- There was a loud noise when the car crashed into the tree.
- هنگامی که ماشین به درخت برخورد کرد صدای بلندی ایجاد شد.

n.

deck

[dek]

عرشه، عرشه کشتی



- ❖ A deck is a wooden floor built outside of a house or the floor of a ship.
- A ship will store many supplies below its deck.
- یک کشتی بسیاری از لوازم را زیر عرشه‌اش ذخیره می‌کند.

v.

engage

[ɪn'geɪdʒ]

مشغول بودن، درگیر شدن



- ❖ To engage in something means to do it.
- Dad was engaged in sawing a piece of wood in half.
- پدر مشغول اره کردن تکه ای چوب از وسط بود.



adj.

firm

[fɜ:rm]

سفت ، محکم

- ❖ When something is firm, it is solid but not too hard.
- He sleeps better on a firm bed.

➤ او روی تخت سفت بهتر می‌خوابد.



n.

fuel

['fju:əl]

سوخت

- ❖ fuel is something that creates heat or energy.
- Heat is the fuel that comes from fire.

➤ گرما سوختی است که از آتش ناشی می‌شود.



adj.

grand

[grænd]

بزرگ، عظیم

- ❖ When something is grand, it is big and liked by people.
- The grand mountain rose high into the sky.

➤ کوه بزرگ تا آسمان برافراشته بود.



n.

hurricane

['hɜ:rəkən]

طوفان شدید

- ❖ A hurricane is a bad storm that happens over the ocean.
- The wind from the hurricane bent the palm tree.

➤ باد ناشی از طوفان شدید درخت نخل را خم کرد.

n.

loss

[lɒːs]

ضرر، زیان

❖ A loss means the act or an instance of losing something.

➤ I suffered a big loss while I was gambling.

➤ من وقتی قمار می کردم ضرر بزرگی متحمل شدم.



adj.

plain

[pleɪn]

ساده

❖ If something is simple, it is plain and not decorated.

➤ He bought a pair of plain white shoes over the weekend.

➤ او آخر هفته یک جفت کفش سفید ساده خریداری کرد.



n.

reef

[riːf]

صخره دریایی، تپه دریایی

❖ A reef is a group of rocks or coral that rise to or near the ocean.

➤ He walked along the reef and looked at the water below.

➤ او در امتداد صخره‌های دریایی قدم زد و به آب در پایین نگاه کرد.



v.

shut

[ʃʌt]

بستن

❖ To shut something means to close it tightly.

➤ Please shut the door; the air outside is cold.

➤ لطفا در را ببندید. هوای بیرون سرد است.



adj.

strict

[strikt]

سخت گیر



- ❖ When someone is strict, they make sure others follow rules.
- The teacher is strict. She does not let students talk in class.
- معلم سختگیر است. او اجازه نمی‌دهد دانش آموزان در کلاس صحبت کنند.

v.

surf

[sɜ:rf]

موج سواری کردن



- ❖ To surf means to use a special board to ride on waves in the ocean.
- The students went to the beach to surf during their vacation.
- دانش آموزان در هنگام تعطیلات به ساحل رفتند تا موج سواری کنند.

n.

task

[tæsk]

وظیفه، تکلیف



- ❖ A task is a piece of work to be done that is usually difficult.
- My task for the weekend was to clean the entire back yard.
- وظیفه من برای آخر هفته تمیز کردن کل حیاط پشتی بود.

n.

zone

[zoun]

منطقه، بخش، ناحیه



- ❖ A zone is an area that has different qualities from the ones around it.
- Firefighters often work in danger zones.

➤ آتش نشانان غالباً در مناطق خطرناک کار می‌کنند.

Exercise 1

Choose the word that is a better fit for each sentence.

1. cotton / fuel

The _____ for the car is gas.

My favorite shirt is made out of _____.

2. loss / insure

The _____ of his job made Steve worry about money.

She wanted to _____ that her car was safe, so she locked the door.

3. coral / reef

The boy found a piece of colorful _____ in the ocean.

That group of rocks coming out of the ocean is a _____.

4. surfed / amuse

Funny stories always _____ me.

I _____ quite a bit when I was in Hawaii last summer.

5. task / shut

I was given the _____ of editing his entire manuscript.

Don't forget to _____ the door on your way out.

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

accuse

grand

strict

ensure

shut

There are 1 _____ rules about what people may wear at fancy parties. Instead of normal things, people must 2 _____ that they wear 3 _____ clothing. If a man wears the wrong clothes, people will 4 _____ him of ruining the evening. They will make him leave and 5 _____ the door behind him.

Exercise 3

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. He blamed me of taking the last piece of pie.
ac _____
2. The man's bedroom was very simple.
pla _____
3. The clown likes to entertain children.
amu _____
4. I need to change the way I run so I can be faster.
adj _____
5. During their free time, the children did many different activities.
en _____ in
6. This cloth dress is one of my favorites.
co _____
7. The bad storm over the ocean almost reached the land.
hu _____
8. Tightly close the window before the rain starts!
S _____
9. He will hit something and break his bike if he closes his eyes while riding.
c _____
10. The army fights in the war area.
z _____

The Two Captains

Once there were two ships. Both ships carried **cotton**. The captains were very different. Thomas was **strict**. He made his crew **engage** in difficult **tasks**. "Make sure the ship's deck is **firm** and that nothing falls! Put more **fuel** in the tank!" he said. His ship was very **plain**, but he never had a problem with it.

The second captain, William, was not serious. He had a **grand** ship, and he loved having fun. His crew **amused** him by singing and dancing. But his crew never fixed anything on the ship. They just wanted to **surf**.

One day, Thomas saw a **hurricane** ahead. He knew that his ship needed to turn around. But he was sure William did not see the storm. He **adjusted** the dials on the radio and called his friend. Thomas said, "You'll hit the reef. It's made completely of **coral**. Turn around to ensure that you do not **crash**."

William said, "We will go under the **deck** and **shut** the door. We will dance and sing until we are past the danger **zone**."

When William's ship got to the hurricane, the wind blew it into the reef. The ship crashed, and water flowed below the deck. William's

crew **accused** him of being

a bad captain. The

loss of the ship

taught William

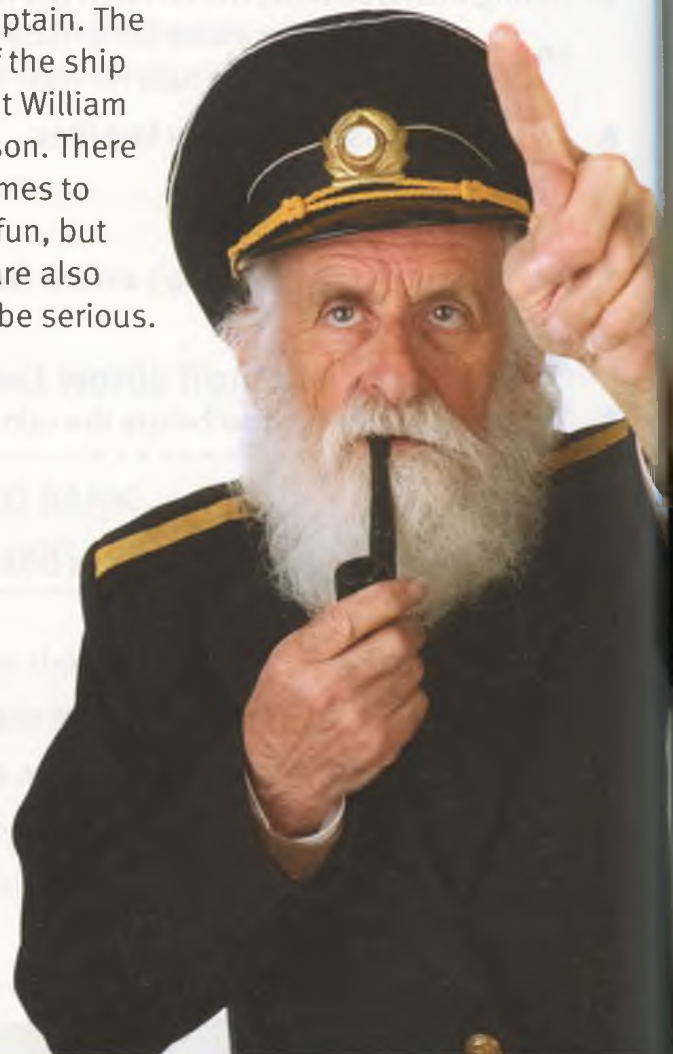
a lesson. There

are times to

have fun, but

there are also

times to be serious.



دو کاپیتان

روزگاری دو کشتی وجود داشت. هر دو کشتی پارچه نخی حمل می‌کردند. ناخداها بسیار متفاوت بودند. توماس سختگیر بود. او خدمه‌ی خود را وادار می‌کرد مشغول انجام وظایف سخت باشند. " او گفت: مطمئن شوید که عرشه کشتی محکم است و هیچ چیز سقوط نمی‌کند! سوخت بیشتری را در مخزن قرار دهید!" کشتی او بسیار ساده بود، اما هرگز با آن مشکلی نداشت.

ناخدای دوم، ویلیام، جدی نبود. او یک کشتی بزرگ داشت و دوست داشت خوش بگذرانند. خدمه‌اش او را با آواز خواندن و رقصیدن سرگرم می‌کردند. اما خدمه‌اش هیچ وقت چیزی روی کشتی تعمیر نکرده بودند. فقط می‌خواستند گشت و گذار کنند.

یک روز، توماس یک طوفان پیش رو دید. او می‌دانست که کشتی او نیاز به بازگشت دارد. اما مطمئن بود که ویلیام طوفان را ندیده است. او موج رادیو را تنظیم کرد و با دوستش تماس گرفت. توماس گفت: تو به صخره‌ی دریایی اصابت خواهی کرد. آن کاملاً از مرجان ساخته شده است. ویلیام گفت: " برای اطمینان برگرد که تصادف نکنی. "

ویلیام گفت: " ما به زیر عرشه خواهیم رفت و در را می‌بندیم. ما می‌رقصیم و می‌خوانیم تا از منطقه خطرناک بگذریم. "

وقتی کشتی ویلیام به طوفان رسید، باد آن را به صخره کوبید. کشتی تصادف کرد و آب زیر عرشه به جریان افتاد. خدمه ویلیام او را متهم کردند که کاپیتان بدی است. خسارت کشتی به ویلیام درسی داد. وقت‌هایی هست که باید خوش بگذرانی، اما وقت‌هایی هم هست که باید جدی باشی.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why surfing amuses William
 - b. How Thomas is too strict to be a captain
 - c. Why people should be serious sometimes
 - d. Why hurricanes form over the ocean
2. Why did Thomas turn his ship around?
 - a. He saw the hurricane and did not want to crash.
 - b. He wanted to go to the reef.
 - c. He could not shut the door.
 - d. He wanted to engage in other activities.
3. Why did William's crew accuse him of being a bad captain?
 - a. William did not go into the storm's danger zone.
 - b. William caused the loss of the ship.
 - c. He did not succeed in getting the cotton to its destination.
 - d. He ensured his crew that they would not crash.
4. According to the passage, all of the following are true about Thomas EXCEPT _____.
 - a. he told his crew to put fuel in the tank
 - b. he had his crew make sure the deck was firm
 - c. he adjusted the radio dial to call William
 - d. he sang and danced to songs from an opera
5. What happened when William's ship reached the hurricane?



لیست کلمات درس 27

- apology (n.)
- bold (adj.)
- capture (v.)
- cardinal (adj.)
- duke (n.)
- expose (v.)
- guilty (adj.)
- hire (v.)
- innocent (adj.)
- jail (n.)
- minister (n.)
- ordinary (adj.)
- permanent (adj.)
- preserve (v.)
- pronounce (v.)
- resemble (v.)
- symptom (n.)
- tobacco (n.)
- twin (n.)
- witch (n.)

n.

apology

[ə'pɒ:lədʒi]

عذرخواهی، پوزش



- ❖ An apology is something someone says to show that they are sorry.
- After arguing with her teacher, the girl wrote the teacher an apology.
- دختر پس از مشاجره با معلمش برای او یک عذرخواهی نوشت.

adj.

bold

[bɒld]

جسور، دلیر، با شهامت



- ❖ If someone is bold, they are not afraid of doing something.
- The bold man climbed the high mountain.
- مرد جسور از کوه مرتفع بالا رفت.

v.

capture

['kæptʃər]

گرفتن



- ❖ To capture someone or something is to catch them.
- James tried to capture the bubbles in his hands.
- جیمز سعی کرد حباب‌ها را در دستانش بگیرد.

adj.

cardinal

['kɑ:rdɪnl]

مهم، اصلی، اساسی



- ❖ If a rule or quality is cardinal, then it is the most important one.
- Raising your hand in the classroom before you speak is a cardinal rule.
- بالا بردن دست خود در کلاس قبل از صحبت، یک قاعده مهم است.

n.

duke

[du:k]

دوک، لقب موروثی اعیان انگلیس

- ❖ A duke is a man of high social rank but below a king or queen.
- The duke ruled over the land.

➤ دوک بر سرزمین فرمانروایی می‌کرد.

v.

expose

[ɪk'spoʊz]

به نمایش گذاشتن، عرضه کردن

- ❖ To expose is to make known something that is hidden.
- He took off his shirt exposing his costume.

➤ او لباسش را درآورد تا لباس مخصوصش را به نمایش بگذارد.

adj.

guilty

['gɪlti]

گناهکار، مقصر

- ❖ If people feel guilty, they feel bad for what they did.
- I felt guilty for taking my sister's cookies.

➤ من به خاطر گرفتن کلوچه‌های خواهرم احساس گناه کردم.

v.

hire

['haɪə]

استخدام کردن

- ❖ To hire someone is to pay them money to work for you.
- We hired a man to paint our house.

➤ ما یک مرد را استخدام کردیم تا خانه ما را رنگ کند.



Prep.

innocent

['inəsnt]

بیگناه، بی تقصیر

- ❖ If someone is innocent, they are not guilty of a crime.
- The judge said that the woman was innocent of the crime.
- قاضی گفت که این زن در این جنایت بی گناه بوده است.



n.

jail

[dʒeɪl]

زندان

- ❖ jail is a place where criminals go to be punished.
- The thief was caught and sent to jail for ten years.
- دزد دستگیر شد و به مدت ده سال به زندان فرستاده شد.



n.

minister

['mɪnɪstər]

وزیر

- ❖ A minister is an important person in government with many duties.
- The minister of education controls the country's schools.
- وزیر آموزش و پرورش مدارس کشور را کنترل می‌کند.



adj.

ordinary

['ɔ:rdnəri]

معمولی، عادی

- ❖ If someone or something is ordinary, they are not special in any way.
- Today was just an ordinary day. Nothing unusual happened.
- امروز فقط یک روز معمولی بود. هیچ چیز غیر عادی رخ نداد.



adj.

permanent ['pɜːrmənənt]

دائمی، پایدار

- ❖ If something is permanent, it lasts for a long time or forever.
- We don't know if Aunt Mildred's visit will be a permanent one.
- ما نمی دانیم بازدید عمه میلدرد دائمی خواهد بود یا خیر.



v.

preserve ['priːzɜːrv]

حفاظت کردن، محافظت کردن

- ❖ To preserve is to protect something from harm.
- Dad sprayed a chemical on the house to help preserve its looks.
- پدر ماده‌ای شیمیایی روی خانه اسپری کرد تا از نمای آن محافظت کند.

v.

pronounce [prəˈnaʊns]

تلفظ کردن



- ❖ To pronounce is to say the sounds of letters or words.
- Young children often have trouble pronouncing words right.
- کودکان خردسال اغلب در تلفظ صحیح کلمات مشکل دارند.

v.

resemble [riˈzembəl]

شباهت داشتن، مانند بودن



- ❖ To resemble someone is to look like them.

- The baby resembles his father a great deal.

➤ کودک بسیار شبیه پدرش است.

n.

symptom

['sɪmptəm]

نشانه، علامت



- ❖ A symptom of a bad condition or illness is a sign that it is happening.
- Sneezing and a high fever are symptoms of the common cold.
- عطسه و تب زیاد علائم سرماخوردگی معمولی است.

n.

tobacco

[tə'bækəʊ]

تباکو، دخانیات



- ❖ tobacco is a plant whose leaves are smoked, such as in cigarettes.
- The tobacco in cigarettes is bad for your health.
- دخانیات موجود در سیگار برای سلامتی شما بد است.

n.

twin

[twin]

دوقلو



- ❖ twins are two children born at the same time.
- My sister and I are twins. We look exactly the same.
- من و خواهرم و دوقلو هستیم. ما کاملاً یکسان به نظر می‌رسیم.

n.

witch

[wɪtʃ]

جادوگر، ساحره



- ❖ A witch is a woman with magical powers.
- People think that witches fly around on broomsticks.
- مردم فکر می‌کنند که جادوگران بر روی جاروها پرواز می‌کنند.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. The magical woman in the story had a black cat.
w _____
2. My sister gave me words that showed she was sorry when she broke my radio.
an apo _____
3. The man went to a place where criminals go for stealing.
j _____
4. People say I look like my mother.
re _____
5. Did I say your name correctly?
p _____

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

permanent

capture

twin

resembles

ordinary

I have a 1 _____ sister who very much 2 _____ me.
When we were kids, we'd 3 _____ fireflies in jars on summer nights.
We would stand still and wait for them to light up. Then we'd quickly scoop them
into 4 _____ glass jars and put the lids on. But the jars were never
the bugs' 5 _____ homes. We always let them go before we went
inside.

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

1. It is important that you read the story carefully. _____
 a. It will help to expose any mistakes
 b. Then it will capture your dog
2. Mike and Ike look the same. _____
 a. They don't resemble their mother
 b. They must be twin brothers
3. If you want to be understood, _____
 a. you must be bold
 b. you must pronounce your words clearly
4. Please keep our city clean. _____
 a. It helps to preserve its beauty
 b. It makes it ordinary
5. Children need to learn that _____
 a. witches are in their schools
 b. tobacco is bad for their health
6. Don't worry about breaking the glass. _____
 a. You don't need to give an apology
 b. You think you are innocent
7. The man was caught for stealing the money _____
 a. and went to jail b. but did not know the minister
8. It would be wonderful _____
 a. if I had bugs in my bed b. if the company hired me
9. I don't have a baseball glove. _____?
 a. Can I borrow a duke b. Can you loan me yours
10. If you do something bad, _____
 a. you might feel guilty afterwards
 b. you will be a permanent guest

The Duke and the Minister

A mean **duke** grew **tobacco**, and his **cardinal** rule was to always keep the plants healthy. The duke's top **minister** was his **twin** brother. They closely **resembled** each other. One day, the tobacco plants started to die. He hired men to watch the fields. Soon, the men brought a woman to him and said, "We **captured a witch!**"

The Duke asked, "How do you know?"

"She sang magic words. I can't **pronounce** them. She has cursed us. The death of the plants is a **symptom** of her curse," the men said.

"I am just an **ordinary** woman. I was singing a song in a different language," the woman protested.

The duke didn't listen. "You are **guilty**. You will go to **jail**."

The minister thought that she was **innocent**. He needed to **expose** the truth. He asked the duke to loan him one of his plants. He looked at it closely. He saw hundreds of small bugs eating it! Then the minister went to the jail and did something **bold**.

"Let this woman go," he said.

The guards thought he was the duke. They let her go. The minister said, "I owe you an **apology**."

"Thank you. I thought my stay in jail was **permanent**," the woman answered.

The minister thought the duke would punish him. But he didn't. The duke was too busy trying to **preserve** his plants.



دوک و وزیر

یک دوک بدجنس تنباکو می‌کاشت، قانون اصلی او این بود که برای همیشه گیاهان را سالم نگه دارد. نخست وزیر دوک برادر دوقلویش بود. آنها به یکدیگر شباهت نزدیکی داشتند. یک روز، گیاهان تنباکو شروع به مردن کردند. او افرادی را استخدام کرد تا از مزارع مراقبت کنند. طولی نکشید، افراد یک زن را برای او آوردند و گفتند: "ما یک جادوگر دستگیر کردیم!"

دوک پرسید: "از کجا می‌دانید؟"

افراد گفتند: "او کلماتی جادویی را خواند. من نمی‌توانم آنها را تلفظ کنم. او ما را نفرین کرده است. مرگ این گیاهان نشانه‌ای از نفرین او است."

زن اعتراض کرد: "من فقط یک زن معمولی هستم. من در حال خواندن آهنگی با زبان متفاوت بودم."

دوک گوش نداد و گفت: "تو گناهکاری. به زندان خواهی رفت."

وزیر گمان کرد که او بی‌گناه است. او لازم است حقیقت را نمایان کند. از دوک تقاضا کرد یکی از گیاهانش را به او قرض بدهد. با دقت به آن نگاه کرد. او صدها حشره کوچک را دید که آن را می‌خوردند. سپس وزیر به زندان رفت و کاری جسورانه انجام داد.

او گفت: "بگذارید این زن برود."

نگهبانان گمان کردند که او دوک است. آنها به او اجازه دادند برود. وزیر گفت: "من یک عذر خواهی به تو بدهکارم."

زن پاسخ داد: "سپاسگزارم. من فکر می‌کردم که ماندنم در زندان دائمی است."

وزیر فکر کرد دوک او را مجازات خواهد کرد. اما او این کار را نکرد. دوک خیلی سرش شلوغ بود و سعی می‌کرد از گیاهان خود محافظت کند.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why the duke was afraid of witches
 - b. How a minister did what was right
 - c. Why the duke loaned his brother a plant
 - d. How a woman was captured and taken to jail

2. Why did the duke hire the men to watch the fields?
 - a. They had a bold plan to preserve the tobacco.
 - b. The tobacco plants were being destroyed.
 - c. He needed them to expose the truth.
 - d. He wanted permanent guards to watch the farmers.

3. Who or what was destroying the tobacco plants?
 - a. An ordinary woman
 - b. Little bugs
 - c. A guilty witch
 - d. The symptoms of disease

4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the duke and the minister are twins
 - b. the minister pretended to be the duke
 - c. the duke gave an apology to the innocent woman
 - d. the guard said the woman pronounced magic words

5. Why did the duke and the minister resemble each other?



لیست کلمات درس 28

- accompany (v.)
- bare (adj.)
- branch (n.)
- breath (n.)
- bridge (n.)
- cast (v.)
- dare (v.)
- electronic (adj.)
- inn (n.)
- net (n.)
- philosophy (n.)
- pot (n.)
- seed (n.)
- sharp (adj.)
- sort (n.)
- subtract (v.)
- tight (adj.)
- virtual (adj.)
- weigh (v.)
- whisper (v.)

v.

accompany [ə'kʌmpəni]

همراهی کردن، همراه بودن

❖ To accompany other people means to join them or go with them.

➤ My brothers accompanied me to the movie.

➤ برادرانم مرا در رفتن به سینما همراهی کردند.



adj.

bare [ber]

برهنه، لخت، عریان

❖ When something is bare, it is plain. It has no covering.

➤ He likes to walk around in his bare feet.

➤ او دوست دارد با پاهای برهنه خود راه برود.



n.

branch [bræntʃ]

شاخه

❖ A branch is the part of a tree with leaves.

➤ The monkey was hanging from a branch on the tree.

➤ میمون از شاخه‌ای روی درخت آویزان بود.



n.

breath [breθ]

نفس، دم

❖ A breath is the air that goes into and out of one's lungs.

➤ You can't take a breath under water.

➤ شما زیر آب نمی‌توانید نفس بکشید.



n.

bridge

[brɪdʒ]

پل



- ❖ A bridge is something that is built over a river so people can cross it.
- The old bridge fell into the river.

➤ پل قدیمی در رودخانه افتاد.

v.

cast

[kæst]

پرتاب کردن، انداختن



- ❖ To cast something means to throw it.
- The fisherman cast his line into the water.

➤ ماهیگیر طنابش را درون آب انداخت.

v.

dare

[der]

جرات کردن، شهامت داشتن



- ❖ To dare means to be brave enough to try something.
- He dared to jump out of the airplane and skydive.

➤ او جرات کرد از هواپیما به بیرون بپرد و سقوط آزاد کند.

adj.

electronic

[ɪˌlek'trɒnɪk]

الکترونیکی، لوازم برقی



- ❖ When something is electronic, it uses electricity to do something.
- I like having electronic devices such as an MP3 player.

➤ من داشتن دستگاه‌های الکترونیکی مانند دستگاه پخش MP3 را دوست دارم.



n.

inn

[ɪn]

مسافرخانه، مهمانخانه

- ❖ An inn is a place where travelers can rest and eat.
- The visitor got a room at the inn.

➤ مسافر اتاقی در مهمانسرا گرفت.



n.

net

[net]

تور، دام

- ❖ A net is a bag made of strong thread. It is used to catch animals.
- The boy caught butterflies in his net.

➤ پسر پروانه‌ها را در تور خود گرفت.



n.

philosophy

[fə'la:səfi]

فلسفه، نظریه، اعتقادات

- ❖ A philosophy is a way to think about truth and life.
- My philosophy is "live and let live".

➤ فلسفه من این است "زندگی کن و اجازه زندگی بده".



n.

pot

[pɑ:t]

قابلمه، دیگ

- ❖ A pot is a deep, round metal container used for cooking.
- Don't touch the pot on the stove. It's hot.

➤ به قابلمه روی اجاق گاز دست نزنید. داغ است.



n.

seed

[si:d]

بذر، دانه، تخم



- ❖ A seed is the hard part of a plant or fruit that trees grow from.
- I planted the seed in the dirt hoping that it would grow into a tree.
- بذر را به این امید که به یک درخت تبدیل شود در خاک کاشتم.

adj.

sharp

[ʃɑ:rp]

تیز، برنده



- ❖ When something is sharp, it has a thin edge that cuts things easily.
- That knife is very sharp. Be careful not to hurt yourself.
- آن چاقو بسیار تیز است. مراقب باشید به خودتان آسیب نرسانید.

n.

sort

[sɔ:rt]

نوع، گونه



- ❖ A sort of something is a type of it.
- What sort of instrument do you want to learn to play?
- چه نوع سازی را می‌خواهی برای نواختن یاد بگیری؟

v.

subtract

[səb'trækt]

تفریق کردن، کم کردن

$$\begin{array}{r} 20 \\ - 10 \\ \hline 10 \end{array}$$

- ❖ To subtract means to take something away.
- We learned how to subtract numbers from each other in class.
- ما در کلاس یاد گرفتیم که چگونه اعداد را از یکدیگر تفریق کنیم.

adj.

tight

[taɪt]

سفت ، محکم



- ❖ When something is tight, it is fixed or fastened firmly in place.
- The knots were too tight to untie.

➤ گره‌ها آنقدر سفت بودند که نمی‌شد آن‌ها را باز کرد.

adj.

virtual

['vɜ:rtʃuəl]

واقعی



- ❖ If something is virtual, then it is very close to being true or accurate.
- Because he's popular, Joe is the virtual leader of the group.

➤ از آنجا که جو محبوب است ، او رهبر واقعی گروه است.

v.

weigh

[weɪ]

وزن داشتن



- ❖ To weigh something means to see how heavy it is.
- The little dog weighed exactly 3 kgs.

➤ سگ کوچک دقیقاً 3 کیلوگرم وزن داشت.

v.

whisper

['wɪspər]

پچ کردن، در گوشی حرف زدن



- ❖ To whisper means to say very quietly.
- We have to whisper in the library so people can focus on reading.

➤ ما در کتابخانه مجبوریم در گوشی حرف بزنیم تا مردم بتوانند روی خواندن تمرکز کنند.

Exercise 1

Part A Choose the right word for the given definition.

- to take away
a. subtract b. weigh c. dare d. net
- to join
a. tight b. branch c. whisper d. accompany
- a place for travelers to rest
a. seed b. inn c. net d. pot
- a way to think about life
a. philosophy b. sharp c. electronic d. sort
- to throw
a. breath b. virtual c. cast d. bridge

Part B Choose the right definition for the given word.

- branch
a. a part of a tree b. the hard part of a fruit
c. very close to being real d. a metal container
- bare
a. to cut easily b. to use electricity
c. plain d. fixed in place
- whisper
a. to join b. to say quietly
c. to be brave d. to throw
- net
a. a metal container b. a way to think about life
c. a small restaurant d. a bag made of thread
- tight
a. fixed in place b. to cut easily
c. plain d. the air you take in

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the sentence with the **bolded** word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. It is easy to **seed** your dinner.
___ b. It's raining so much that it's a **virtual** flood.
2. ___ a. The boy **whispered** as loudly as he could.
___ b. I don't care what **sort** of food I eat.
3. ___ a. Will you **accompany** me to the party?
___ b. The dog made a **branch** to catch the ball.
4. ___ a. The door was **bare** when we took the paint off of it.
___ b. She put the **net** inside the fish.
5. ___ a. The man **dared** to leap over the big fire.
___ b. It is important to **weigh** your math tests.
6. ___ a. The **virtual** in my house was dirty.
___ b. When I tell a secret, I **whisper** so no one else will hear.
7. ___ a. You should save the **seed** so you can grow another plant.
___ b. **Sort** your hands before dinner.
8. ___ a. The boy was **accompanied** alone to school.
___ b. The fish could not get out of the **net**.
9. ___ a. The bird built a nest on the highest **branch**.
___ b. I **dare** my bed before going to sleep.
10. ___ a. The **bare** tree was covered in leaves and bark.
___ b. You can **weigh** yourself to see if your diet is working.

The Fisherman

Every day, a fisherman sat on a **bridge**. He ate apples and spit the **seeds** into the water. He had a simple way to catch fish. He cut a **branch** off of a tree and tied a line to it. He put a **sharp** hook on it and made a **tight** knot. Then he **whispered**, "Come here fish." Like magic, the fish bit the hook. He put them in a **big net** and took them home to make **big pots** of fish soup from them.

One day, another man walked up to him. He said, "My name is George. I am staying at the **inn**. I bet that I am a better fisherman than you. I will **accompany** you today. I **dare** you to prove your skill!" The fisherman **cast** his line.

George had a lot of **electronic** tools. One machine gave him the **virtual** locations of fish. His rod **weighed** fish.

At the end of the day, George **subtracted** his fish from the fisherman's. The fisherman had beaten him by forty-seven!

George asked, "How do you catch fish with only a branch and a **bare** line? I have many different **sorts** of tools." The fisherman told George, "My **philosophy** is simple. I am patient, and I believe in myself. Take a **breath**, and try it my way."



ماهی گیر

هر روز، یک ماهی گیر روی پلی می‌نشست. او سیب می‌خورد و دانه‌هایش را به داخل آب تف می‌کرد. او روش ساده‌ای برای صید ماهی داشت. شاخه‌ای را از درختی برید و طنابی به آن گره زد. یک قلاب تیز روی آن گذاشت و گره محکمی زد. سپس زمزمه کرد: " ماهی بیا اینجا". بصورت سحرآمیز ماهی قلاب را گاز گرفت. او آنها را در تور بزرگی قرار داد و آنها را به خانه برد تا یک ظرف بزرگ سوپ ماهی از آنها درست کند.

یک روز، مرد دیگری به سوی او آمد. او گفت: "اسم من جورج است. من در مسافرخانه اقامت دارم. شرط می‌بندم که من ماهیگیر بهتری از تو هستم. امروز تو را همراهی خواهم کرد. من تو را به چالش می‌کشم تا مهارت خودت را ثابت کنی! ماهیگیر طنابش را انداخت.

جورج ابزارهای برقی زیادی داشت. یک دستگاه محل واقعی ماهی‌ها را به او می‌داد. میله‌اش ماهی را وزن می‌کرد. در پایان روز، جورج ماهی‌های خود را از ماهیگیر جدا کرد.

ماهیگیر با اختلاف چهل و هفت تا او را شکست داده بود!

جورج پرسید: " تو چطور ماهی را با یک شاخه و طناب خالی می‌گیری؟ من انواع مختلفی ابزار دارم." ماهیگیر به جورج گفت: " فلسفه من ساده است. من صبور هستم، و به خودم ایمان دارم. نفسی تازه کن و روش من را امتحان کن."

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why fishermen use nets
 - b. How a man's philosophy was a good match for fishing
 - c. Why George did not like the fisherman
 - d. How to whisper to fish
2. What did the fisherman do with the fish?
 - a. He sold them to a restaurant.
 - b. He subtracted the fish.
 - c. He made all sorts of food.
 - d. He made soup with them.
3. What did the fisherman do every day at the bridge?
 - a. He would cast his line into the water.
 - b. He would take a breath then jump into the river.
 - c. He would accompany George from the inn.
 - d. He would eat a virtual pot of fish soup.
4. According to the passage, all the following are true about the fisherman EXCEPT _____.
 - a. he used a tree branch
 - b. he used a bare line with a tight knot
 - c. he used a sharp hook
 - d. he used an electronic rod to weigh fish
5. What did George dare the fisherman to do?



لیست کلمات درس 29

- abstract (adj.)
- annual (adj.)
- clay (n.)
- cloth (n.)
- curtain (n.)
- deserve (v.)
- feather (n.)
- fertile (adj.)
- flood (n.)
- furniture (n.)
- grave (n.)
- ideal (adj.)
- intelligence (n.)
- nowadays (adv.)
- obtain (v.)
- religious (adj.)
- romantic (adj.)
- shell (n.)
- shore (n.)
- wheel (n.)



adj.

abstract

['æbstrækt]

انتزاعی

- ❖ If ideas are abstract, they are based on general ways of thinking.
- The idea of beauty is abstract and changes over time.
- ایده‌ی زیبایی انتزاعی است و با گذشت زمان تغییر می‌کند.



adj.

annual

['ænjuəl]

سالانه

- ❖ If something is annual, it happens once a year.
- The only time I see my aunts and uncles is at our annual family picnic.
- پیک نیک سالیانه‌ی خانوادگی تنها زمانی است که خاله‌ها و عموهایم را می‌بینم.



n.

clay

[kleɪ]

خاک رس

- ❖ clay is a type of heavy, wet soil used to make pots.
- She made a bowl out of the clay.

➤ او کاسه‌ای را از خاک رس درست کرد.



n.

cloth

[klɔːθ]

پارچه

- ❖ cloth is material used to make clothes.
- His shirt is made of a very soft type of cloth.

➤ پیراهن او از پارچه‌ای بسیار نرم ساخته شده است.

n.

curtain

['kɜːrtɪn]

پرده



❖ A curtain is a cloth hung over a window or used to divide a room.

➤ She opened the curtains to let light into the room.

➤ او پرده‌ها را کشید تا نور داخل اتاق شود.

v.

deserve

[dɪ'zɜːrv]

سزاوار / شایسته بودن، ارزش داشتن



❖ To deserve is to be worthy of something as a result of one's actions.

➤ The dog deserved a bone for behaving very well.

➤ سگ بخاطر رفتار خیلی خوب سزاوار یک استخوان بود.

n.

feather

['feðər]

پر



❖ feathers are the things covering birds' bodies.

➤ That bird has orange feathers on its chest.

➤ آن پرنده پرهای نارنجی روی سینه خود دارد.

adj.

fertile

['fɜːrtl]

حاصلخیز



❖ If land is fertile, it is able to produce good crops and plants.

➤ The farmer grew many vegetables in the fertile soil.

➤ کشاورز در خاک حاصلخیز سبزیجات زیادی پرورش داد.

n.

flood

[flʌd]

سیل



- ❖ A flood is an event in which water covers an area which is usually dry.
- After three days of rain, there was a flood in the city.
- پس از سه روز بارش باران ، سیل در شهر رخ داد.

n.

furniture

['fɜːnɪtʃər]

اثاثیه منزل، وسایل خانه



- ❖ furniture is the things used in a house such as tables and chairs.
- His living room only had a few simple pieces of furniture.
- اتاق نشیمن او فقط چند تکه ساده اثاثیه منزل (مبلمان) داشت.

n.

grave

[ɡreɪv]

قبر ، آرامگاه، مزار



- ❖ A grave is the place where a dead person is buried.
- We visit our grandfather's grave each year.
- ما هر سال از مزار پدربزرگ خود بازدید می‌کنیم.

adj.

ideal

[aɪ'di:əl]

ایده آل، دلخواه



- ❖ If something is ideal, it is the best that it can possibly be.
- This house is an ideal place for my family. It has everything we need.
- این خانه مکانی ایده آل برای خانواده‌ام است. همه چیز مورد نیازمان را دارد.



n.

intelligence [in'telɪdʒəns]

هوش

- ❖ intelligence is the ability to learn and understand things.
- Because of his high intelligence, he finished school early.
- به دلیل هوش زیادش، مدرسه را زود به پایان رساند.

adv.

nowadays ['naʊədeɪz]

این روزها، امروزه



- ❖ If something happens nowadays, it happens at the present time.
- In the past people walked everywhere. nowadays, they use cars.
- در گذشته مردم همه جا پیاده می‌رفتند. امروزه آنها از اتومبیل استفاده می‌کنند.

v.

obtain [əb'teɪn]

به دست آوردن



- ❖ To obtain is to get something you want or need.
- After I passed the test, I obtained my driver's license.
- گواهی نامه‌ی رانندگی‌ام را پس از اینکه در آزمون قبول شدم دریافت کردم.

adj.

religious [rɪ'lɪdʒəs]

مذهبی



- ❖ When something is religious, it has to do with religion.
- The holy man spoke about religious topics.

➤ آن مرد پرهیزکار درباره‌ی مباحث مذهبی صحبت کرد.



adj.

romantic

[rou'mæntɪk]

عاشقانه



❖ When something is romantic, it has to do with love.

➤ The young couple went to see a romantic movie.

➤ زوج جوان رفتند که یک فیلم عاشقانه ببینند.

n.

shell

[ʃel]

صدف



❖ A shell is a hard covering that protects the body of some sea creatures.

➤ There were many pretty shells on the beach.

➤ صدف‌های زیبایی زیادی کنار ساحل وجود داشت.

n.

shore

[ʃɔ:r]

کنار دریا، ساحل



❖ A shore is the edge of a large body of water.

➤ All of the boats were floating near the shore.

➤ همه قایق‌ها در نزدیکی ساحل شناور بودند.

n.

wheel

[wi:l]

چرخ



❖ A wheel is a round thing on a vehicle that turns when it moves.

➤ A car has four wheels.

➤ یک ماشین چهار چرخ دارد.

Exercise 1

Write a word that is similar in meaning to the underlined part.

1. I need your help to move the tables and chairs.
fur _____
2. This problem will test your ability to understand.
int _____
3. I don't like to be in dark rooms with covers over the windows.
c _____
4. Tom and Rob are the best roommates.
i _____
5. I need to get a ticket before I can board the train.
o _____

Exercise 2

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

clay

cloth

fertile

graves

flood

Jimmy went on a trip to Egypt. There, he visited the great pyramids. Inside them were the 1 _____ of old kings. He also visited a village near the river and learned about a recent 2 _____. People grew many crops on this 3 _____ land. They used 4 _____ pots to carry water from the river into their homes. One friendly man gave Jimmy a white 5 _____ to cover his head from the hot sun. It was a wonderful trip.

Exercise 3

Check (✓) the sentence with the bolded word that makes better sense.

1. ___ a. Many people wear a **shell** before going out into the rain.
___ b. In the past three years, the city has had two **floods**.
2. ___ a. **Nowadays**, many students like using the Internet to do research.
___ b. Many groups have **annual** meetings every month.
3. ___ a. Some dogs have interesting **feathers**.
___ b. You cannot ride a bicycle if it doesn't have **wheels**.
4. ___ a. Churches don't let people read **religious** books.
___ b. Birds use their **feathers** to help them fly.
5. ___ a. Many people enjoy watching **romantic** movies.
___ b. If you get good grades, you don't **deserve** to graduate.
6. ___ a. A crab is an example of an animal that has a **shell**.
___ b. People never go fishing near the **shore**.
7. ___ a. People who do bad things **deserve** to be punished.
___ b. Mountains and hills are examples of **floods**.
8. ___ a. Horses are more common than cars **nowadays**.
___ b. People who are **religious** go to church.
9. ___ a. If you are **romantic**, you probably don't like movies about love.
___ b. There are beaches along the **shore** of some oceans and lakes.
10. ___ a. You should see your doctor once a year for an **annual** checkup.
___ b. The wind makes the **wheels** of a car turn.

Osiris and the Nile

Long ago, Osiris was the king of Egypt, and Isis was the queen. They ruled the **fertile** land by the Nile River. They had great **intelligence**, and they shared their **abstract** ideas with everyone. Osiris taught the Egyptians how to make **wheels** and **furniture**. Isis taught them how to make things from **clay** and **cloth**. The people thought they **deserved** a gift. So they built Osiris and Isis a pyramid. Everyone loved Osiris except his brother, Set. Set wanted to be king.

Osiris made his **annual** trip around Egypt and led **religious** events. The villages gave him beautiful **shells** and colorful **feathers** as gifts.

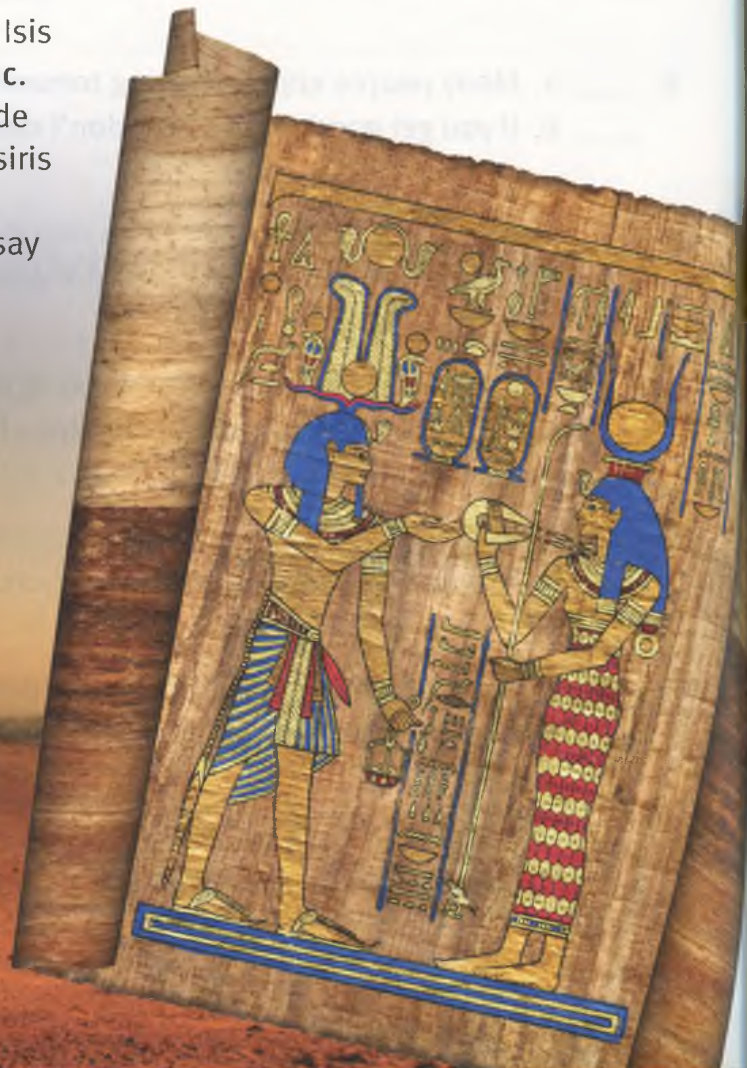
When Osiris returned, Set brought a beautiful wooden box from behind a **curtain**.

“If someone fits inside this box, I will give it to him or her,” Set said.

Osiris got in it. It was an **ideal** fit!

Suddenly, Set closed the box and threw it into the river. “Now I will be king!” Set said.

The box washed up on a foreign **shore** after a **flood**. Isis brought his body home and **obtained** a **grave** for him in Egypt. The Egyptian gods thought Isis had done something very **romantic**. Because of her love, the gods made him the god of the underworld. Osiris returned every spring to help the farmers. Even **nowadays**, people say Osiris keeps their crops alive.



اسیریس و رود نیل

در گذشته‌های دور، اسیریس پادشاه مصر بود و ایزس ملکه بود. آنها سرزمین حاصل خیز را توسط رود نیل اداره می‌کردند. آنها هوش زیادی داشتند و اندیشه‌های انتزاعیشان (خیالی) را با همه در میان می‌گذاشتند. اسیریس به مصری‌ها آموخت که چگونه ماشین و مبلمان بسازند. ایزس به آنها آموخت که چگونه اشیایی را از خاک رس و پارچه درست کنند. همه اسیریس را دوست داشتند به جز برادرش ست. ست می‌خواست که پادشاه شود.

اسیریس سفر سالانه‌اش به سرتاسر مصر را انجام داد و رویدادهای مذهبی را رهبری کرد. اهالی روستا به او صدف‌های زیبا و پرهای رنگارنگ به عنوان هدیه دادند.

زمانی که اسیریس بازگشت، ست جعبه‌ی چوبی زیبایی را از پشت پرده آورد. ست گفت، "اگر کسی در این جعبه جا بگیرد، من جعبه را به او خواهم داد." اسیریس به درون جعبه رفت. اندازه‌ی ایده‌آل و متناسبی بود! ناگهان ست جعبه را بست و آن را درون رودخانه انداخت. ست گفت، "حالا من پادشاه خواهم شد!"

پس از سیلی جعبه به یک ساحل خارجی برده شد. ایزس جسد اسیریس را به خانه آورد و قبری را برای او در مصر آماده کرد. خدایان مصر گمان کردند که ایزس کار عاشقانه‌ای انجام داده است. به دلیل عشق و علاقه ایزس، خدایان اسیریس را خدای عالم اموات کردند. اسیریس هر فصل بهار برای کمک به کشاورزان برمی‌گشت. حتی امروزه، مردم اظهار می‌کنند که اسیریس محصولاتشان را زنده نگه می‌دارد.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. Why Osiris built a pyramid for Isis
 - b. How Set created a grave for Osiris
 - c. How Osiris died and returned to make Egypt fertile
 - d. Why the gods thought Isis' actions were romantic
2. What happened each spring?
 - a. Osiris gave people feathers and shells.
 - b. Set obtained furniture from people.
 - c. Set hid a box behind a curtain.
 - d. Osiris made an annual trip to villages.
3. In the last paragraph, we can infer that _____.
 - a. the shore is the ideal home for Osiris
 - b. Set had greater intelligence than the gods
 - c. the gods felt that Isis did a good deed
 - d. nowadays, the Egyptians don't use Osiris' abstract ideas
4. According to the passage, all the following are true EXCEPT _____.
 - a. the Egyptians made wheels
 - b. the Egyptians used clay pots
 - c. the Egyptians made cloth
 - d. the Egyptians built religious villages
5. What did the Egyptians do for their king and queen?



لیست کلمات درس 30

- appeal (v.)
- assume (v.)
- borrow (v.)
- client (n.)
- downtown (n.)
- dull (adj.)
- embarrass (v.)
- fare (n.)
- former (adj.)
- formula (n.)
- found (v.)
- invest (v.)
- loan (n.)
- practical (adj.)
- quarter (n.)
- salary (n.)
- scholarship (n.)
- temporary (adj.)
- treasure (n.)
- urge (v.)

v.

appeal

[ə'pi:l]

خوشایند/جذاب بودن، جالب بودن



❖ To appeal to someone is to be interesting or attractive to them.

➤ Sleeping all day appeals to me, but I have to go to school.

➤ خوابیدن در تمام روز برای من جذاب است اما مجبورم به مدرسه بروم.

v.

assume

[ə'su:m]

فرض کردن، انگاشتن، پنداشتن (که)



❖ To assume something is to think that it is true, even with no proof.

➤ I assume you are both familiar with this plan.

➤ من فرض می‌کنم که شما هر دو با این طرح آشنا هستید.

v.

borrow

['ba:rou]

قرض گرفتن



❖ To borrow something is to take it and then give it back later.

➤ Can I borrow a pencil to use today? I'll give it back to you tomorrow.

➤ آیا می‌توانم امروز یک مداد برای استفاده قرض بگیرم؟ فردا آن را به تو برمی‌گردانم.

n.

client

['k্লাient]

مشتری



❖ A client is a person or business that pays another to do a service.

➤ She has many clients who enjoy coming to her salon.

➤ او مشتری‌های زیادی دارد که از آمدن به سالن زیبایی‌اش لذت می‌برند.

n.

downtown [ˌdaʊn'taʊn]

مرکز شهر



- ❖ The downtown is the center of most cities.
- The downtown is filled with many tall buildings.
- مرکز شهر پر از ساختمان‌های بسیار بلند است.

adj.

dull [dʌl]

خسته کننده ، ملال آور ، کسل کننده



- ❖ If something is dull, it is not exciting.
- The movie was very dull. I fell asleep watching it.
- آن فیلم بسیار کسل کننده بود. هنگام تماشای آن خوابم برد.

v.

embarrass [ɪm'bærəs]

خجالت زده شدن ، آشفته / دستپاچه شدن



- ❖ To embarrass someone is to make them feel ashamed or foolish.
- He was embarrassed when he couldn't remember her name.
- وقتی نتوانست نام او را بخاطر بیاورد ، خجالت زده شد.

n.

fare [fer]

کرایه



- ❖ A fare is an amount of money paid to use a bus, train, or taxi.
- Since he is a senior, my grandfather pays a low fare for the bus.
- به دلیل اینکه پدربزرگم (شهروندی) مسن است ، کرایه کمتری را برای اتوبوس پرداخت می‌کند.



adj.

former

['fɔːrmər]

سابق ، پیشین، گذشته

- ❖ former describes something that used to be but is not any more.
- The hotel, a former castle, was built over 200 years ago.
- هتل ، قلعه‌ی سابق ، بیش از 200 سال پیش ساخته شده بود.

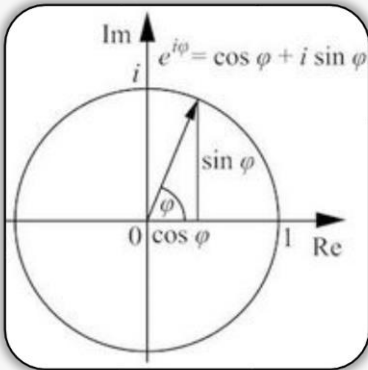
n.

formula

['fɔːrmjələ]

فرمول

- ❖ A formula is a set mathematical way or method of solving a problem.
- I learned a new formula that may help us with our problem.
- من یک فرمول جدید یاد گرفتم که ممکن است به ما در حل مسئله کمک کند.



v.

found

[faʊnd]

تاسیس کردن ، برپا کردن

- ❖ To found a company or organization means to start it.
- The pilgrims founded one of the first colonies in the United States.
- مهاجران مذهبی (زوار) یکی از نخستین گروه‌های ایالت متحده آمریکا را تاسیس کردند.



v.

invest

[in'vest]

سرمایه گذاری کردن

- ❖ To invest means to use money in a way that will bring a profit later.
- I invested money in a new building that should bring me a profit.
- من پولی را در یک ساختمان جدید سرمایه گذاری کردم که می‌بایست برایم سودی به همراه داشته باشد.





n.

loan

[loʊn]

وام

- ❖ A loan is the act of lending something, usually money.
- I got a loan from the bank.

➤ من وامی از بانک دریافت کردم.



adj.

practical

['præktɪkl]

کاربردی

- ❖ If something is practical, it is useful in normal life.
- Learning English is practical; you can use it in many places.
- یادگیری زبان انگلیسی کاربردی است؛ شما قادر خواهید بود در مکان‌های زیادی از آن استفاده کنید.



n.

quarter

['kwɔːrtər]

بیست و پنج سنت ، سکه ی بیست و پنج سنتی

- ❖ A quarter is 25 cents.
- He paid a quarter for the candy.

➤ او بیست و پنج سنت برای آبنبات پرداخت کرد.



n.

salary

['sæləri]

درآمد ، حقوق

- ❖ A salary is how much money a person makes at his or her job.
- He got a new job with a better salary.

➤ او شغل جدیدی همراه با حقوق بهتر بدست آورد.

n.

scholarship ['ska:lərʃɪp]

بورس تحصیلی



- ❖ A scholarship is money given to one so they can go to school.
- I got a scholarship to help me pay for university.

➤ من بورسیه تحصیلی دریافت کردم تا به من در پرداخت شهریه دانشگاه کمک کند.

adj.

temporary ['tempəreri]

موقت ، موقتی



- ❖ If something is temporary, it exists for a short time.
- This car is only temporary; I'll get a new one soon.

➤ این ماشین صرفاً موقتی است ؛ به زودی یک ماشین جدید خواهم گرفت.

n.

treasure ['trezər]

گنج



- ❖ A treasure is a collection of valuable things, especially jewels or gold.
- They became very rich when they found the buried treasure.

➤ آن ها پس از آنکه گنج دفن شده را پیدا کردند، بسیار ثروتمند شدند.

v.

urge [ɜ:rdʒ]

اصرار کردن، درخواست کردن



- ❖ To urge someone is to try very hard to get them to do something.
- He urged them to believe his story.

➤ او به آنها اصرار کرد که داستانش را باور کنند.

Exercise 1

Choose the right definition for the given word.

1. salary
 - a. a system of beliefs
 - b. to lend something and get back later
 - c. the money one makes at a job
 - d. the center of a town
2. former
 - a. in the past
 - b. existing for a short time
 - c. to establish something
 - d. a system of beliefs
3. formula
 - a. to believe without proof
 - b. to try to get someone to act
 - c. a mathematical rule
 - d. money for school
4. practical
 - a. the way it used to be
 - b. useful
 - c. to complain
 - d. a valuable collection
5. borrow
 - a. to be wanted
 - b. to take for a short time
 - c. a system of beliefs
 - d. to make a person feel stupid
6. assume
 - a. to believe without proof
 - b. useful
 - c. 25 cents
 - d. boring
7. downtown
 - a. a group of letter or numbers
 - b. the money you make at a job
 - c. food with a lot of sugar
 - d. the center of a city
8. dull
 - a. boring
 - b. to believe without proof
 - c. to take for a short time
 - d. to give but receive back later
9. treasure
 - a. money for school
 - b. to encourage
 - c. a valuable collection
 - d. the center of a town
10. temporary
 - a. a small amount of money
 - b. to establish
 - c. existing for a short time
 - d. to give but get back later

Exercise 2

Check (✓) the one that suits the blank naturally.

- The lawyer is very busy because _____.
 a. she has many clients
 b. she makes a good salary
- I want to make more money, so _____.
 a. I will invest some of my money
 b. I assume that I did
- I didn't like the book; _____.
 a. it was only temporary
 b. it was very dull
- This math problem is hard, _____.
 a. and I wish I had a formula
 b. so I need a scholarship
- I don't need more money. _____.
 a. I will found a bakery
 b. I have enough cash

Exercise 3

Fill in the blanks with the correct words from the word bank.

WORD BANK

urge

borrow

practical

appeal

downtown

- If something is _____, you can use it often.
- You can _____ my hat, but you have to give it back to me.
- I like living _____; it is an exciting place.
- I _____ you to save money; you might need it later.
- Does flying _____ to you? I've always wanted to try it.

The Taxi Driver

Peter's job was driving a taxi **downtown**. He made a small **salary**. But he liked his job because it wasn't **dull**. Every day, he saw new things that **appealed** to him. Peter was **practical** about the future. "Maybe I can get a **scholarship** to college," he thought. "I could learn mathematical **formulas** and get a job at a bank. I could help **clients invest** their money."

Peter stopped to pick up a passenger. "Where to?" he asked.

"Go to the Fourth Street Bank. And don't talk to me. I've had a rough day," the man said. Peter was angry, but he had a peaceful philosophy. When they stopped, the man's **fare** came to \$10.25. He put his hands in his pockets. "I can't find my wallet!" he said. "I can't pay the fare!"

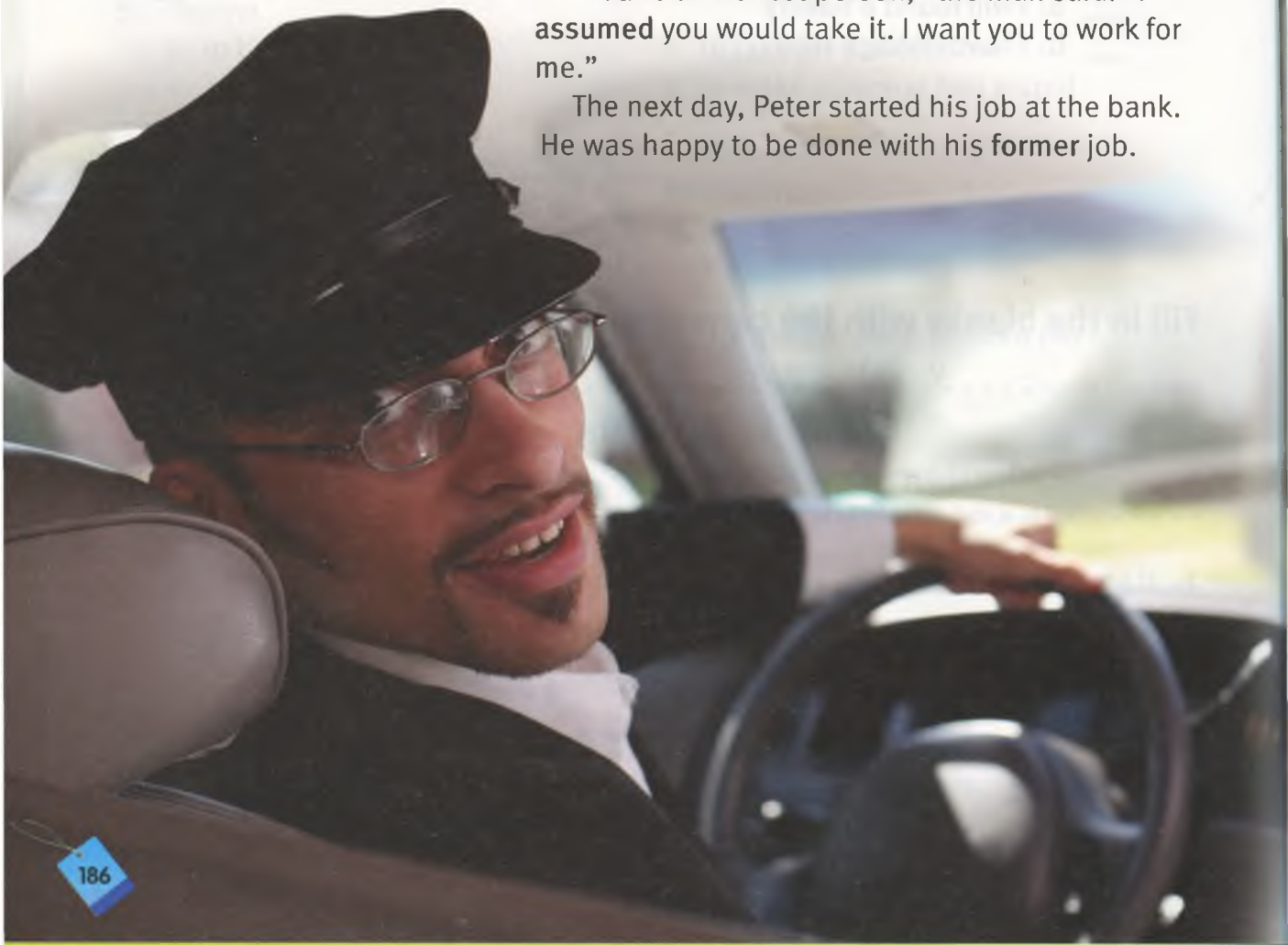
Peter said, "Maybe I'll give you a **temporary loan**. You can **borrow** ten dollars and a **quarter** from me."

The man was **embarrassed**, saying, "I was mean to you, but now I want to help you. I **founded** this bank. I want to give you one thousand dollars."

That much money was like a **treasure** to Peter. The man **urged** him to take the money, but he didn't.

"You're an honest person," the man said. "I **assumed** you would take it. I want you to work for me."

The next day, Peter started his job at the bank. He was happy to be done with his **former** job.



راننده تاکسی

شغل پیتر رانندگی یک تاکسی در مرکز شهر بود. او درآمد ناچیزی داشت. اما او شغلش را دوست داشت چون خسته کننده نبود. هر روز، چیزهای جدیدی را می‌دید که برایش جذاب بود. پیتر در مورد آینده خوشبین بود. او گمان می‌کرد: "شاید من بتوانم بورسیه تحصیلی دانشگاه را بگیرم. من می‌توانم فرمول‌های ریاضی را یاد بگیرم و شغلی در بانک بدست بیاورم. من می‌توانم به مشتری‌ها کمک کنم پولشان را سرمایه گذاری کنند."

پیتر برای گرفتن مسافر توقف کرد. او پرسید: "کجا می‌روید؟"

مرد گفت: "به خیابان چهارم بانک برو. و با من حرف نزن. من روز سختی داشتم." پیتر خشمگین شد، ولی فلسفه صلح جویی داشت. وقتی آنها توقف کردند، کرایه این مرد 10 دلار و 25 سنت شده بود. او دست‌هایش را در جیب‌هایش گذاشت. گفت: "من کیف پولم را پیدا نمی‌کنم! نمی‌توانم کرایه را بپردازم!"

پیتر گفت: "شاید من یک وام موقت به شما بدهم. شما می‌توانید ده دلار و بیست و پنج سنت از من قرض بگیرید."

مرد خجالت زده بود، می‌گفت: "من نسبت به شما بدجنس بودم، اما حالا می‌خواهم به شما کمک کنم." من این بانک را تاسیس کردم. می‌خواهم هزار دلار به تو بدهم."

این پول بیشتر مثل یک گنج برای پیتر بود. مرد به او اصرار کرد که پول را بگیرد، اما او این کار را نکرد.

مرد گفت: "تو آدم صادقی هستی. من فکر کردم که آن را خواهی گرفت. می‌خواهم شما برای من کار کنید."

روز بعد پیتر کارش را در بانک شروع کرد. او خوشحال بود که از شغل سابقش خلاص شده است.

Reading Comprehension

Answer the questions.

1. What is this story about?
 - a. How a poor taxi driver got a new job by being kind
 - b. Why a dull job with a high salary appeals to people
 - c. How to get a scholarship to go to college
 - d. Why it is important not to borrow money

2. What does Peter do downtown?
 - a. He drives a taxi.
 - b. He studies math formulas.
 - c. He grumbles about his job.
 - d. He drives people around for a quarter.

3. Why does the man give Peter a job?
 - a. He assumes that Peter is practical.
 - b. He didn't want to give Peter a treasure.
 - c. Peter showed that he was honest.
 - d. Peter loaned him twenty five cents.

4. Why does Peter like his job?
 - a. He invested a lot of money in it.
 - b. It is only a temporary job.
 - c. He can embarrass other people by being rude.
 - d. It is never dull and he meets many people.

5. What does the man urge Peter to do?

Appendix

THE WORLD



National Flags – Countries – Nationalities

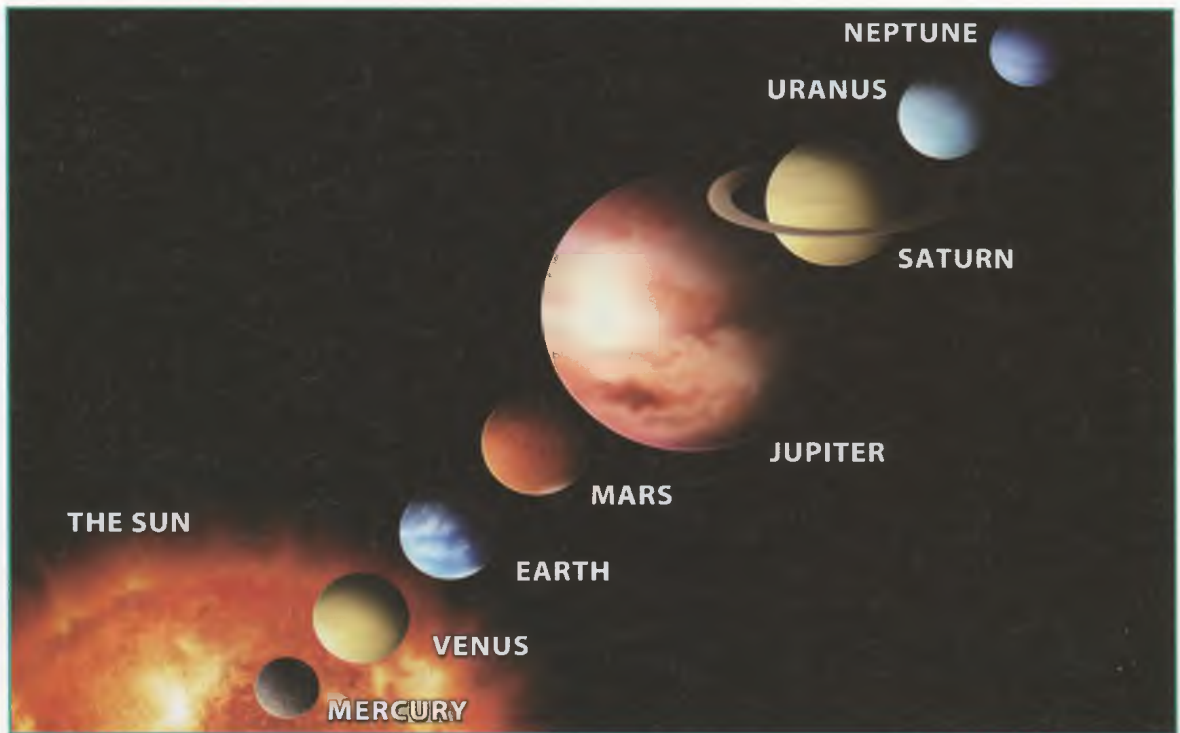
	Australia	Australian		Indonesia	Indonesian		Russia	Russian
	Brazil	Brazilian		Iraq	Iraqi		Spain	Spanish
	Canada	Canadian		Italy	Italian		Sweden	Swedish
	China	Chinese		Japan	Japanese		Switzerland	Swiss
	Egypt	Egyptian		South Korea	Korean		Taiwan	Taiwanese
	Finland	Finn or Finnish		Mexico	Mexican		Thailand	Thai
	France	French		Netherlands	Dutch		Turkey	Turk or Turkish
	Germany	German		Norway	Norwegian		United Kingdom	British
	Greece	Greek		Philippines	Filipino		United States	American
	India	Indian		Poland	Polish		Vietnam	Vietnamese

CLOTHES

SOLAR SYSTEM



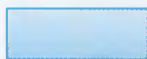
SOLAR SYSTEM



SHAPES



square



rectangle



triangle



circle



semi-circle



oval



cube



cone



sphere



pyramid



cylinder



prism

WEIGHTS & MEASURES

Weight

1 kilogram = 1,000 grams

1 ton = 1,000 kilograms

1 pound = 16 ounces

1 kilogram = 2.2 pounds

Capacity measure

1 quart = 4 cups

1 pint = 2 cups

1 quart = 2 pints

1 gallon = 4 quart

1 gallon = 8 pints

Linear measure

1 centimeter = 10 millimeters

1 meter = 100 centimeters

1 kilometer = 1,000 meters

1 inch = 2.54 centimeters

1 foot = 12 inches

1 yard = 3 feet

1 mile = 5,280 feet

CLOTHES



T-shirt



shirt



blouse



sweater



sweatshirt



coat



raincoat



jacket



vest



pants



shorts



jeans



overalls



skirt



dress



tuxedo



suit



swimsuit

Underwear & Sleepwear / Shoes & Accessories



socks



slippers



shoes



sneakers



boots



rainboots



undershirt



underpants



boxers



pajamas



bathrobe



sunglasses



gloves



mittens



belt



tie



backpack



umbrella



scarf



hat



cap



necklace



earrings



ring

Index

A

ability 110
abroad 38
absorb 92
abstract 176
abuse 74
accompany 170
accomplish 122
accuse 158
adjust 158
admire 56
admission 68
admit 152
adopt 116
afford 74
agriculture 110
aid 56
aim 104
alarm 134
alike 140
amuse 158
ancestor 32
anger 38
angle 32
annoy 140
annual 176
anxiety 80
anxious 8
apart 134
apology 164
apparent 86
appeal 182
approve 122
approximate 122
architecture 140
army 80
arrest 134
arrow 20
artificial 140
assume 182
astronaut 128
astronomy 68
attach 104
attempt 56

authority 56
awake 128
award 134
awful 8

B

bake 74
bare 170
barrier 122
basis 44
bath 146
battle 20
bean 74
beg 116
bend 146
bet 104
beyond 116
billion 80
bin 152
biology 44
blame 68
blind 86
bold 164
boot 32
border 32
borrow 182
boss 92
bow 20
bowl 152
branch 170
brave 20
breath 170
breed 134
bride 38
bridge 170
brief 38
bring 14
broad 50
bucket 134
bush 50

C

cabin 152
cage 44
calculate 86
candle 74
capable 50
capital 56
capture 164
cardinal 164
carriage 104
cartoon 110
carve 80
cash 152
cast 170
castle 14
ceiling 110
chain 140
chamber 98
chase 38
chat 86
cheat 50
chemistry 68
chest 26
chew 146
chief 20
citizen 62
classic 104
clay 176
client 182
cloth 176
colleague 44
colony 44
command 14
commit 86
committee 92
commute 104
compose 86
concentrate 50
conclude 50
confidence 26
confident 50
confirm 104
congratulate 32
consequence 26

considerable 50
consist 8
consult 80
contest 134
contract 92
convert 74
convey 50
convict 134
convince 110
cooperate 56
coral 158
costume 116
cotton 158
council 62
counsel 14
courage 128
crash 158
crew 92
criminal 152
criticize 104
curious 110
curtain 176

D

dare 170
debate 44
debt 74
deck 158
declare 62
decrease 74
defend 56
definite 50
delay 110
delight 51
deny 98
depart 44
depress 44
deserve 176
desire 8
despite 68
destination 51
destruction 56
detect 122

devote 92
 diary 110
 dictate 51
 differ 104
 dig 92
 dine 92
 dinosaur 68
 disabled 146
 disadvantage 20
 disappoint 38
 disaster 26
 disorder 56
 distinct 140
 distinguish 140
 disturb 26
 dive 38
 division 56
 document 98
 donate 92
 dormitory 86
 double 92
 downtown 182
 dozen 152
 duke 164
 dull 182
 dust 140
 duty 122

E

eager 8
 edge 51
 elder 152
 electronic 170
 element 110
 elementary 122
 elevate 93
 embarrass 182
 emergency 80
 emphasize 98
 enable 57
 enemy 20
 engage 158
 enormous 62

ensure 14
 entrance 20
 estimate 26
 exchange 38
 excitement 140
 exclaim 116
 exhaust 86
 exhibit 68
 expense 104
 explosion 14
 expose 164
 extend 116
 extraordinary 62

F

facial 152
 factual 44
 failure 122
 faith 110
 fame 68
 fantastic 146
 fare 182
 fascinate 44
 fault 74
 favor 38
 feather 176
 fee 38
 fence 152
 fertile 176
 fever 98
 fiction 146
 firm 158
 flag 146
 flavor 93
 float 128
 flood 176
 flu 98
 fog 62
 fool 116
 forbid 116
 forecast 68
 forever 39
 formal 105

former 182
 formula 182
 fortune 80
 found 183
 foundation 93
 frame 32
 freeze 98
 frustrate 57
 fuel 158
 fund 74
 funeral 62
 furniture 176

G

garage 134
 generation 93
 generous 75
 genius 68
 gentle 69
 geography 69
 gesture 98
 giant 62
 govern 57
 gradual 122
 grain 111
 grand 159
 grant 128
 grave 177
 gravity 128
 greenhouse 86
 greet 111
 guarantee 80
 guilty 164
 guy 39

H

handle 93
 hardly 20
 heal 140
 heaven 32
 height 105

hike 80
 hire 164
 honor 26
 household 8
 hurricane 159

I

ideal 177
 ignore 86
 illustrate 116
 immigrant 122
 impress 26
 impression 62
 income 62
 incredible 32
 indeed 116
 ingredient 75
 inherit 141
 initial 80
 inn 170
 innocent 164
 insert 123
 insist 75
 inspect 146
 inspire 153
 instant 123
 intelligence 177
 intend 20
 intense 81
 intent 8
 interfere 69
 interpret 117
 interrupt 98
 invent 105
 invest 183
 investigate 111

J

jail 164
 jewel 128
 jewelry 14

Index

journal 146
journalist 134
joy 111
junior 105

K

kindly 117
kiss 39

L

label 111
labor 105
land 14
landscape 8
last 98
laughter 21
layer 93
legend 32
lend 81
lift 8
lightly 69
likeness 99
liquid 146
load 8
loan 183
log 21
loss 159
lung 9

M

mad 63
manner 141
marathon 26
marvel 147
mechanic 105
mere 153
mess 75
metal 75
meteor 14
military 21
miner 128

mineral 128
minister 165
mission 45
monitor 75
monk 111
monster 14
mood 39
moreover 99
motion 9
motive 117
mount 141
mud 93

N

narrow 26
neat 153
nest 117
net 170
nevertheless 45
northern 15
nowadays 177
nutrient 147

O

obey 21
obtain 177
obvious 87
occasion 153
occupation 45
odd 111
oppose 75
ordinary 165
origin 117
ought 63
overcome 147
overseas 45

P

pace 9
palace 39
pale 27

participate 128
passive 75
path 51
pause 111
peak 81
penalty 153
permanent 165
permission 129
permit 39
perspective 99
persuade 45
philosophy 171
physics 87
plain 159
plenty 57
polite 9
portion 87
possess 9
pot 171
potential 81
pour 129
poverty 123
practical 183
praise 32
presence 129
preserve 165
pretend 123
pride 81
priest 111
prime 105
principal 69
proceed 33
profession 111
pronounce 165
proof 81
protest 39
pup 135
pure 33

Q

qualify 135
quantity 75
quarter 183

quit 81

R

rank 123
rapidly 9
rational 99
raw 129
recall 147
reception 117
recognition 123
recover 99
reef 159
refrigerate 123
regret 147
reject 117
relative 33
relieve 57
religious 177
rely 99
remark 9
remind 87
remote 15
rent 123
repair 135
reputation 57
resemble 165
resist 63
resort 51
resume 135
retire 123
reveal 63
rid 63
rob 135
romantic 177
roof 141
rough 27
route 45
row 69
royal 57
rude 153
ruins 45

S

salary 183
 satellite 129
 satisfy 27
 scale 129
 scholar 45
 scholarship 183
 scream 27
 sculpture 39
 secretary 87
 secure 21
 seed 171
 seek 9
 senior 33
 sensitive 27
 settle 153
 severe 87
 shade 27
 shadow 51
 sharp 171
 shelf 69
 shell 177
 shift 105
 shine 9
 shock 99
 shore 177
 shortage 141
 shut 159
 shy 99
 signal 105
 significant 45
 silence 117
 silent 33
 sincere 105
 sink 33
 skip 129
 slave 57
 slip 135
 smooth 93
 soil 93
 solid 141
 somewhat 135
 sort 171
 soul 147

southern 15
 spill 9
 spin 81
 spite 69
 stable 135
 stare 99
 statistic 23
 statue 15
 steady 21
 steam 15
 stock 141
 stream 117
 stretch 129
 strict 159
 struggle 57
 stupid 57
 submit 15
 substance 141
 subtract 171
 succeed 51
 sue 75
 sufficient 147
 super 69
 superior 33
 supplement 27
 surf 159
 surgery 147
 surround 33
 suspect 51
 sword 63
 symptom 165

T

tale 63
 talent 87
 task 159
 telescope 129
 temple 15
 temporary 183
 terror 27
 thesis 87
 thick 33
 threat 27

thus 99
 tight 171
 tiny 81
 tissue 135
 tobacco 165
 tomb 141
 tone 117
 tough 147
 trap 63
 treasure 183
 trial 63
 tribe 39
 trust 21
 tube 147
 tutor 81
 twin 165
 twist 21

U

underground 129
 uniform 87
 unique 93
 unless 21
 upper 15
 urge 183

V

valley 51
 vehicle 153
 victim 27
 violent 63
 virtual 171
 vision 87
 volcano 45

W

wallet 153
 weapon 21
 weed 15
 weigh 171

wet 69
 wheel 177
 whisper 171
 wing 15
 witch 165
 wound 141
 wrap 33

Y

yard 135
 yell 153
 youth 39

Z

zone 159

Answer Key

Unit 1

Exercise 1

Part A

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. d

Part B

1. b 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. a

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. b
5. They wanted to ask the Twelve Months for gifts.

Unit 2

Exercise 1

1. b, c 2. a, d 3. c, d 4. a, c 5. b, d

Exercise 2

1. wing 2. statues 3. steam
4. submit to 5. upper

Exercise 3

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. a 8. a 9. b 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b
5. The boy covered himself with weeds to hide his smell.

Unit 3

Exercise 1

Part A

1. log / bow 2. enemy / military
3. obey / trust 4. secured / intended
5. disadvantage / battle

Part B

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. b 5. b

Exercise 2

1. entrance 2. chief 3. weapon
4. hardly 5. laughter
6. arrow 7. brave 8. twist
9. steady 10. unless

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. b 3. b 4. d
5. The soldiers did whatever the chief asked them because they trusted and obeyed their leader.

Unit 4

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. d

Part B

1. threat / terror 2. confidence / consequence
3. victim / disaster 4. disturb / satisfy
5. rough / sensitive

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. a 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. a 8. b 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. a 3. c 4. c
5. They kept getting caught in trees.

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. b
6. b 7. a 8. d 9. b 10. c

Exercise 2

Part A

1. a, c 2. b, c 3. a, d 4. c, d 5. a, c

Part B

1. angle 2. ancestor 3. silent
4. legend 5. pure

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. d 3. a 4. a
5. He wrapped his coat around himself because the air was very cold on the mountain.

Unit 6

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. d

Part B

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. a

Exercise 2

1. permits 2. favor 3. chase
4. palace 5. protest
6. disappointed 7. guy 8. forever
9. fee 10. abroad

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. b 3. a 4. d
5. She thought the frog would die if he leaves the pool.

Unit 7

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b, c 2. a, d 3. b, d 4. a, b 5. b, c

Part B

1. mission 2. colleagues 3. route
4. factual 5. colony

Exercise 2

1. a 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. a
6. b 7. b 8. b 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. b 3. c 4. a
5. He could not find the talking bird after looking for one month.

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1. valley 2. concentrate 3. broad
4. convey 5. destination 6. edge
7. path 8. bush
9. capable 10. resort

Exercise 2

1. cheat 2. shadow 3. suspect
4. succeed 5. dictate
6. confident 7. conclude 8. delight
9. definite 10. considerable

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. d 3. a 4. c
5. He had been tricked by a family of slow turtles.

Unit 9

Exercise 1

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. b

Exercise 2

1. a, b 2. a, d 3. a, c 4. b, c 5. b, d

Exercise 3

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b
6. b 7. b 8. b 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b
5. He had to work and could not play.

Unit 10

Exercise 1

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a 5. b

Exercise 2

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. d

Exercise 3

1. citizen 2. council 3. funeral
4. trial 5. declared
6. enormous 7. rid 8. ought
9. fog 10. extraordinary

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. b 3. a 4. c
5. He did not want to be put on trial and go to jail.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

1. super 2. forecast 3. row
4. exhibit 5. dinosaurs 6. wet
7. admission 8. astronomy
9. interferes 10. principal

Exercise 2

1. b 2. b 3. b 4. b 5. a

Exercise 3

1. chemistry / despite 2. exhibit / admission
3. dinosaur / geography 4. gentle / Lightly
5. fame / genius

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. d
5. No. It was going to rain very hard that day.

Unit 12

Exercise 1

Part A

1. b 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. b

Part B

1. a, b 2. a, d 3. b, d 4. b, c 5. a, c

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. a
6. b 7. a 8. a 9. b 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c
5. He gave customers free meals to celebrate his big change.

Unit 13

Exercise 1

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. b
6. b 7. c 8. a 9. a 10. d

Exercise 2

Part A

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. a

Part B

1. potential / guarantee 2. lends / tutors
3. intense / billions 4. initial / quit
5. anxiety / emergency

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. c 3. b 4. d
5. His plan works every time.

Unit 14

Exercise 1

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. a
6. b 7. d 8. b 9. c 10. a

Exercise 2

Part A

1. uniform 2. obvious 3. remind
4. severe 5. dormitory

Part B

1. ignores 2. secretary 3. apparent
4. commit 5. blind

Reading Comprehension

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b
5. Working so hard could have severe results for Sue.

Unit 15

Exercise 1

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. b

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b

Exercise 3

1. a 2. a 3. a 4. b 5. b
6. b 7. a 8. b 9. b 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. d 3. a 4. b
5. The dirt became heavier because the ground had absorbed a lot of water.

Unit 16

Exercise 1

1. stared 2. recovered 3. lasted
4. shy 5. fever

Exercise 2

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b

Answer Key

Exercise 3

1. tower / chamber
2. perspective / likeness
3. trade / rational
4. shocked / stared
5. moreover / flu
6. gesture / interrupted
7. relied / thus
8. lasted / recovered
9. shy / deny
10. emphasized / freeze

Reading Comprehension

1. c
2. b
3. c
4. b
5. Sam didn't like the prince's chamber because it was cold at night.

Unit 17

Exercise 1

1. d
2. c
3. b
4. b
5. a

Exercise 2

1. junior
2. height
3. labor
4. sincere
5. carriage

Exercise 3

1. b
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. a
6. a
7. b
8. a
9. a
10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b
2. c
3. b
4. d
5. The prime reason was to save money.

Unit 18

Exercise 1

1. a
2. d
3. c
4. b
5. b
6. c
7. a
8. d
9. d
10. b

Exercise 2

Part A

1. joy / odd
2. diary / faith
3. cartoons / profession
4. greeted / convinced
5. labels / abilities

Part B

1. a, c
2. c, d
3. b, c
4. a, d
5. b, d

Reading Comprehension

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. d
5. The priest got a diary because he liked to write.

Unit 19

Exercise 1

Part A

1. c
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. d

Part B

1. a
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. b

Exercise 2

1. reception
2. fool
3. illustrate
4. costume
5. rejected
6. silence
7. begged
8. stream
9. origin
10. forbids

Reading Comprehension

1. d
2. b
3. a
4. b
5. Because he thought that Mrs. May should not adopt the girl.

Unit 20

Exercise 1

1. refrigerate
2. statistics
3. approve
4. poverty
5. barrier
6. pretend
7. duty
8. instant
9. insert
10. rent

Exercise 2

Part A

1. a
2. a
3. b
4. a
5. b

Part B

1. immigrant
2. elementary
3. barrier
4. failure
5. recognition

Reading Comprehension

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. c
5. Albert's family lived in poverty because his father lost his job.

Unit 21

Exercise 1

1. b
2. a
3. d
4. b
5. c
6. b
7. c
8. b
9. d
10. d

Exercise 2

1. angels / astronauts
2. satellite / participate
3. permission / grants
4. minerals / jewels
5. pipe / telescope

Exercise 3

1. underground
2. participate
3. permission
4. awake
5. jewel

Reading Comprehension

1. d
2. c
3. b
4. a
5. He participated in a mission to outer space.

Unit 22

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. d

Part B

1. d
2. c
3. a
4. b
5. b

Exercise 2

1. a
2. b
3. a
4. a
5. b
6. a
7. a
8. b
9. a
10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. d
2. a
3. c
4. b
5. The race was going to be from the barn to the farmer's garage.

Unit 23

Exercise 1

Part A

1. architecture / substance
2. artificial / alike
3. stock / shortage
4. distinct / distinguish
5. roof / tomb

Part B

1. b
2. c
3. a
4. d
5. d

Exercise 2

1. inherit 2. thief 3. dust
 4. chain 5. heal
 6. wound 7. mount 8. annoy
 9. solid 10. manner

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. c
 5. The king was annoyed because he didn't know how the gold could be gone.

Unit 24

Exercise 1

1. b 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. b

Exercise 2

1. inspected 2. chew 3. nutrients
 4. overcome 5. surgery

Exercise 3

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b
 6. b 7. b 8. a 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. c
 5. It made them laugh together.

Unit 25

Exercise 1

Part A

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. b

Part B

1. inspire 2. penalty 3. neat
 4. bowl 5. mere

Exercise 2

1. b 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. b
 6. a 7. b 8. a 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. b 3. c 4. d
 5. He inspired the criminal to be good and tell the truth.

Unit 26

Exercise 1

Part A

1. fuel / cotton 2. loss / insure
 3. coral / reef 4. amuse / surfed
 5. task / shut

Part B

1. strict 2. opera 3. grand
 4. accuse 5. shut

Exercise 2

1. accused 2. plain 3. amuse
 4. adjust 5. engaged
 6. cotton 7. hurricane 8. Shut
 9. crash 10. zone

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d
 5. When his ship reached the hurricane the wind blew it into the reef, and it crashed.

Unit 27

Exercise 1

Part A

1. witch 2. apology 3. jail
 4. resemble 5. pronounce

Part B

1. twin 2. resembles 3. capture
 4. ordinary 5. permanent

Exercise 2

1. a 2. b 3. b 4. a 5. b
 6. a 7. a 8. b 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. b 3. b 4. c
 5. They resembled each other because they were twin brothers.

Unit 28

Exercise 1

Part A

1. a 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. c

Part B

1. a 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. a

Exercise 2

1. b 2. b 3. a 4. a 5. a
 6. b 7. a 8. b 9. a 10. b

Reading Comprehension

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. d
 5. George dared the fisherman to prove his skill.

Unit 29

Exercise 1

Part A

1. furniture 2. intelligence 3. curtains
 4. ideal 5. obtain

Part B

1. graves 2. flood 3. fertile
 4. clay 5. cloth

Exercise 2

1. b 2. a 3. b 4. b 5. a
 6. a 7. a 8. b 9. b 10. a

Reading Comprehension

1. c 2. d 3. c 4. d
 5. The people built Osiris and Isis a pyramid.

Unit 30

Exercise 1

1. c 2. a 3. c 4. b 5. b
 6. a 7. d 8. a 9. c 10. c

Exercise 2

Part A

1. a 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. b

Part B

1. practical 2. borrow
 3. downtown 4. urge 5. appeal

Reading Comprehension

1. a 2. a 3. c 4. d
 5. He urged Peter to take the money.